



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

10397

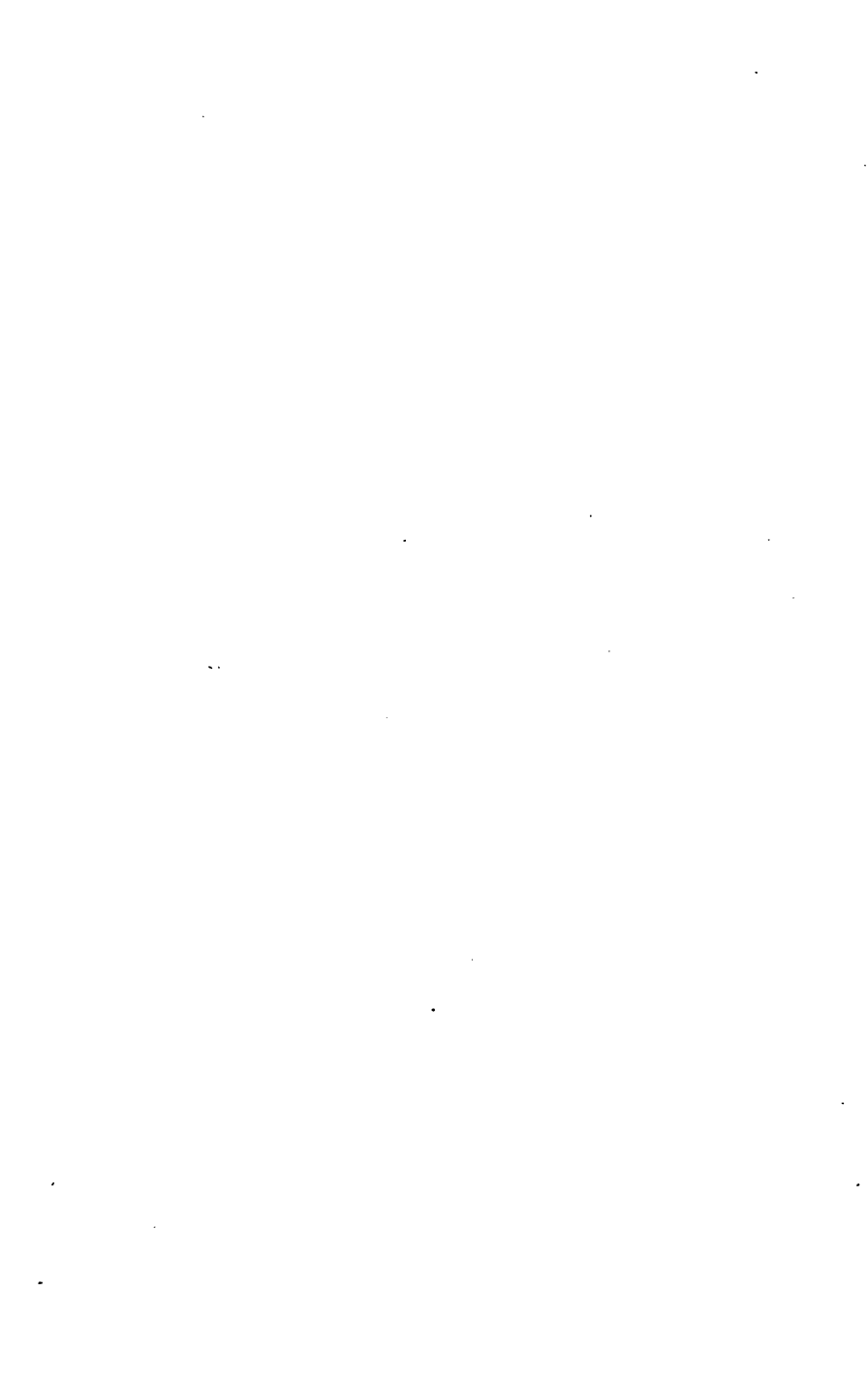
HDI



HW 22JN Q

NP 2347

R



LATIN LESSONS.



LATIN LESSONS

ADAPTED TO THE

MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR,

PREPARED BY

WILLIAM F. ALLEN, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND HISTORY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN;

AND

JOSEPH H. ALLEN,

CAMBRIDGE, MASS.

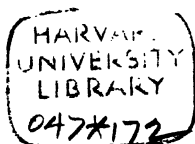
SIXTEENTH THOUSAND.

BOSTON:

GINN BROTHERS.

1875.

KE 10347



Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1869, by
J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for
the District of Massachusetts.

PREFACE.

THIS book of "Lessons" is intended, first, as a guide to the study of Latin on the basis of our "Manual Latin Grammar," published last August; and, secondly, as complementary to that book in several points which need amplifying in the actual business of elementary instruction. Of these latter, we may here specify the introductory matter, particularly the simpler grammatical Definitions and the remarks on Pronunciation; the illustration of topics given in Lessons viii., xv., xix., xxi., xxxiii., xxxv., xxxviii., xl., xlv., lv., lvii.; and the full exposition of the *Oratio Obliqua* in the Note to Chapter XIII., Part Second.

The three Parts of which this volume is made up correspond with the three departments of the Grammar, — Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody. In the first, consisting of sixty set lessons, the Latin phrases and sentences introduced are taken, without exception, from the chapters of Cæsar's Gallic War given in full in the second part; and, with few exceptions, from the first twelve of these. In a few instances, a nominative to a verb has been supplied from the context; but

no other changes have been made, and, in the great majority of cases, the sentences stand exactly as in the complete work. They have been arranged with much care, to illustrate the successive points of Etymology, and are designed to lead the learner by easy degrees from the simplest combinations of words to complete sentences. In all cases, the examples have been taken from the *earliest* chapters possible ; so that the learner will find, when he has finished these preliminary lessons, and enters upon the text of the author, that he has already translated in detail every word in the first chapter, but as he goes on will meet more and more that is unfamiliar, until the thirteenth chapter will be almost entirely new ground.

Corresponding with these Latin sentences are exercises in English to be rendered into Latin. These contain only words and constructions already familiar, — the object being to teach the language by the *concrete* method, through familiarity with classical forms of expression, rather than by means of abstract principles, and to deal as little as possible at this stage with technical Syntax. These exercises are in some parts quite numerous, and may be used or not according to the needs of the class.

The single object aimed at in these sixty lessons is the thorough mastery of the paradigms and principal facts of Etymology, together with such incidental knowledge of the simpler fundamental principles of Syntax as a scholar cannot fail to acquire in the pro-

cess of translating. So much as this ought to *form a part of his mental furniture*, so to speak, before proceeding further; and, if he still hesitates at a form, or a simple direct construction, he should review, and re-review, until these have become as familiar to him as his alphabet. The Lessons are not designed to make Latin easy,—that cannot be done; but to remove all the difficulties which are caused by attempting too much at a time, or by taking things in a wrong order. By this method, we believe that the difficulties will be reduced fully one-half.

The Etymology being once thoroughly learned, the Second Part follows, consisting of the twenty-nine chapters of Cæsar which contain the whole story of the Helvetian war, accompanied by full illustrative Notes, and abundant references to the details of Syntax.* The scholar who has gone carefully through this second part will be fully prepared to take up Cæsar, or any other author of moderate difficulty; and he may easily proceed at once from these “Lessons” to some such course as Hanson’s “Preparatory Latin Prose Book.”

It was a matter of considerable difficulty to decide what Latin author was best adapted to this method;

* In the preparation of the Text and Notes, we have consulted the German editions of Schneider, Kraner, and Herzog; the Variorum editions of Valpy and Lemaire; the valuable English notes of Long, with the excellent school editions of Hanson, Brooks, and Stuart; also the Histories of Merivale, Michelet, and Mommsen; Saulcy’s Campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul; and the History of Julius Cæsar by Napoleon III. The accompanying Map is copied (full scale) from the superb imperial edition of this History.

and it was not until after preparing three nearly complete sets of exercises from other writers, that we decided to fall back upon Cæsar's Gallic War, for the single reason that, in spite of all its defects as a book for young scholars, the first twelve chapters are, on the whole, the easiest good Latin we could find. And, after all, it does not matter much to a boy who is painfully toiling through the rudiments, whether the sentences he is at work on are interesting or not. We do not consider Cæsar, in the main, a good author for young scholars; but his first chapters are admirably adapted to the use of beginners. At the same time, there is the great advantage of having a book which will prepare directly for the author read in most schools; and it is probable, besides, that nowhere else, in so brief a space, could illustrations be found of so large a proportion of the rules of Syntax.

In the Third Part, we have sought to illustrate the great importance and value of the element of Quantity in a careful study of Latin, by a series of verses taken in part from classical authors, but many of them from Donaldson's "Complete Latin Grammar," and composed for that end. These verses — not classic, it will be remembered, but manufactured Latin — may serve for elementary practice in scanning to those teachers who desire to introduce it at the present stage. For ourselves, we think that *all* Latin verse which is read, at least all of the nobler styles, should be as clearly understood in its metrical construction

as in its grammatical form. And the selections we have given, while they will furnish considerable exercise of the pupil's ingenuity, will give him a far better notion than he could get from any single author, of the variety and vivacity to be found in the Latin tongue.

Two or three features of this book seem to require special notice. First, the Vocabularies at the head of several of the earlier lessons. It is an objection to these, that they distract the eye of the pupil in recitation, and fail to give him practice in looking out words while preparing his lesson. Still, some such aid seems necessary while every thing is yet strange and puzzling to his unpractised eye. We have therefore furnished them during the first eighteen lessons ; after which, he is presumed to be able to find words for himself in the general Vocabulary at the end of the book.

A second point is the familiarity gained at the start with the several Prepositions, and the distinction made between the relations expressed by them and by the Cases. This may be found at first a little abstruse and difficult. But without it, no understanding of the use of the cases can be had ; and it will soon be found that the difficulties vanish, and that the scholar really understands, at an early stage, a fundamental and very perplexing principle.

A third point is the careful analysis of the construction of the *Oratio Obliqua*, which usually proves such a stumbling-block to beginners. The first consider-

able case of this, in Chapter XIII. (Part Second), is analyzed at length, and all its forms explained, its verbs being reduced, so far as seemed desirable, to the form which they would have had in direct discourse or narrative. If this chapter is learned thoroughly, and the scholar taught to apply the same processes to those which follow, he will end with a good working knowledge of this difficult construction; and it may be said with truth, that *he who knows the Oratio Obliqua, knows Latin*. Through this, as in all parts of the book, the teacher is warned not to hurry his classes. The Reader, which is to follow this book, is intended for *rapid reading*; but these Lessons require *slow and hard study*.

MADISON, WISCONSIN.

February, 1869.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

	PAGE
PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION	1
DEFINITIONS	3
PRONUNCIATION	5
LESSONS	9

PART II.

STORY OF THE HELVETIAN WAR	49
NOTES	73

PART III.

EXAMPLES IN SCANNING.	1. <i>Hexameter</i>	92
	2. <i>Pentameter</i>	95
DISTINCTION OF WORDS.	1. <i>Differences of Quantity</i>	96
	2. <i>Differences of Form</i>	98

SUPPLEMENT. <i>Analysis of Sentences</i>	105
VOCABULARY	109



LATIN LESSONS.

PART FIRST.

I. PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION.

THE pupil should learn thoroughly the introductory matter contained in the first seven sections of the Grammar, omitting the smaller type. If thought desirable, he may commit to memory all the illustrative examples, which should be carefully analyzed and explained by the teacher.

Thus, in the first example (§7), **pater meus adest**: the terminations **er**, **us** are nominative case-endings of the third and second declensions; the word **pater**, if pronounced with the Italian sound of the vowels, and a little thickening of the consonants, becomes the English *father*, — which was actually formed in this way, and is nearly the same word in Sanscrit, Greek, Latin, German, and English; the syllable **me** is the same as the English, and, with the adjective-ending, signifies *my*; **est** is **es** — (the same as the English *is*) — with **t** the sign of the third person; **ad** is the English *at*, meaning *to* or *near*; so that the whole sentence is, *my father is-at-hand*.

In the second example, **patris ejus amicus miseretur mei**: **is** and **jus** (**ius**) are genitive-endings of the third and second declensions; **amicus** has the same root as the English *amicable* (friendly); **miseretur** has the passive or reflective termination, **tur**, with the same root which is found in the English *mercy*, also in *miserable*; and in **mei** we have the word *me* with the genitive-ending; so that the sentence is, *his father's friend has-mercy on me*.

In the third example, **dedit mihi cultellum; magno mihi usui erat**: the doubled consonant in **dedit** (as in the English *did*)

is sign of the past tense, and means *gave*; *mihi* has the dative-ending *i* with the root *me* (*mi*); the Latin *cultus* is the English *coulter* (the cutting part of a plough), and means a cutting instrument — *cultellus* being the diminutive (*a little knife*), having here the accusative-ending *um*; *magno* and *usui* have the dative-ending of the second and fourth declensions, signifying the purpose or end (see § 51, VII.); and *erat* has, with the root *ēs*, or *ē*, the termination of the imperfect; so that the sentence is, *he gave me a little-knife: it was of great use to me.*

The teacher will illustrate in like manner the remaining examples. He may, however, at his discretion, defer this analysis till the review.

It will be the care of the teacher to make clear to the mind of the pupil those usages in Latin — such as the distinctions of gender, number, and case by inflection — which have little or nothing to correspond in English. The time that this will occupy will vary with the age and capacity of the scholars.

They should be taught also what the Latin language is, when it was spoken, by whom and where; they should be informed of the wealth of Latin literature, and the practical usefulness of the language in modern times. Their attention should further be drawn to the words in English which are derived from Latin (as in the cases analyzed above); and this may be illustrated from any other language known to the pupil. It is very desirable that, as new Latin words are introduced, the pupil should be taught to search for English words from the same root.

II. DEFINITIONS.

Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are called **PARTS OF SPEECH**. There is no Article in Latin.

A **NOUN** is the name of any thing: as, *hōmo*, *man*; *nāvis*, *ship*.

If a noun is the name of a person, or of a thing spoken of by its own name, as if it were a person, it is a **Proper Noun**; if not, it is

a Common Noun. Thus in the sentence *Roma magna est urbs*, *Rome is a vast city*, *Roma* is a proper, and *urbs* a common noun.

An ADJECTIVE is a word used to define a quality: as, *cārus*, *dear*; *bōnus*, *good*.

Comparison shows the degree of the quality: as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>cārus</i> , <i>dear</i> .	<i>carior</i> , <i>dearer</i> .	<i>carissimus</i> , <i>dearest</i> .
<i>bōnus</i> , <i>good</i> .	<i>mēllior</i> , <i>better</i> .	<i>optimus</i> , <i>best</i> .

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun: as, *he* for *the man*.

The First Person, *ēgō*, *I*, *nōs*, *we*, is the person speaking; the Second Person, *tū*, *vōs*, *you*, is the one spoken to; the Third Person, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, is that spoken of, and has no personal pronoun in Latin, Demonstratives being often used instead.

A Demonstrative denotes a particular person or thing: as, *hic*, *this*, *ille*, *that*.

A Relative refers to a person or thing before spoken of: as, *qui*, *who*, *quōd*, *which*.

The person or thing referred to is called the Antecedent: as, *hōmo qui vēnit*, *the man who came*.

An Interrogative asks a question: as, *quis adest?* *who is here?* *tūbinam gentium sūmus?* *where in the world are we?*

A VERB is a word which tells an action or condition: as, *vēni*, *I came*, *cēcīdīt*, *he fell*.

Mood denotes the manner of an action: as, *vēni*, *I came* (Indicative); *vēni*, *come!* (Imperative).

Tense denotes the time of an action: as, *currit*, *he runs* (Present); *cūcurrit*, *he ran* (Past).

Of Voices, the Active speaks of a person doing the action: as, *fērit*, *he strikes*; the Passive, as suffering it: as, *fēritur*, *he is struck*.

A PARTICIPLE expresses the action, etc., of a verb in the form of an adjective: as, *fēriens*, *striking*; *ictus*, *struck*.

An ADVERB is a word which qualifies the meaning of adjectives or verbs: as, *ācerrīmē fērit*, *he strikes very hard*.

A **PREPOSITION** is a word which expresses the relations between other words: as, *in oppidum vēnit*, *he came to town*; *pro patriā mōri*, *to die for one's country*.

A **CONJUNCTION** is a word which connects other words or sentences: as, *prōcērus et vālidus*, *tall and strong*.

INTERJECTIONS are exclamations: as, *heus!* *Halloo!*

GENDER is distinction as to sex, and is Masculine of male creatures: as, *rex*, *king*; Feminine of female creatures: as, *rēgina*, *queen*; neuter of things: as, *sōlium*, *throne*.

Things without sex are Neuter in English: as, *stone*, *tree*. But in Latin they are frequently masculine or feminine: as, *lāpis*, *stone* (masc.); *arbor*, *tree* (fem.). This is called Grammatical Gender.

NUMBER signifies how many, and is Singular when one is spoken of: as, *vīr*, *man*; Plural when more than one: as, *vīri*, *men*.

CASE is the form a noun takes to show its relation to other words: as, *puēri currunt*, *the boys run* (Nominative); *puēri sōror*, *the boy's sister* (Genitive).

This relation is generally shown in English by prepositions: as, *gesta Romanorum*, *the deeds of the Romans*; *invidia mihi*, *envy against me*.

QUANTITY is the time taken in pronouncing a vowel or a syllable, in comparison with other syllables.

Thus in the word *strengthen*, the first syllable is long and the second short in quantity or time, though they are both called short in quality or sound; in *submit*, the first is long and the second short, in quantity, though the latter has the accent.

Quantity is reckoned much more important in Latin than in English, and often shows the difference in the meaning of words. Thus *lēvis* (long e) means *smooth*; *lēvis* (short e), means *light*; *occidit* is *he fell*; *cecīdit*, *he cut or felled*.

EMPHASIS is stress of voice on an important word or phrase: as, *cowards run*; but *brave men stand*.

ACCENT is stress of voice on a particular syllable: as, *the necessary resérves*.

A **PROCLITIC** is a word without accent of its own, that seems to lean on the word after it ; an **ENCLITIC** is one that seems to lean on the word before it.

Thus in the sentence, *The boys, and girls too, are here, — the is a proclitic, and too an enclitic.*

In Latin, the enclitics *que, and, ve, or, ne, whether,* and sometimes *cum, with,* are written as part of the preceding word. Thus in Latin, the sentence given above would be, *puēri puellaeque adsunt.*

For Definitions in Syntax, see § 45.

III. PRONUNCIATION.

It is rather more than a thousand years since Latin has been familiarly spoken in common use, though it still continues to be the language of scholars in some places, and is very extensively used in the services and in all official documents of the Roman church. It is, however, not regarded anywhere now as a living tongue ; and its correct ancient pronunciation is uncertain. In schools and universities of different countries, it is generally pronounced in the way nearest to the native tongue of each. In particular, there are two methods practised among us, known as the English and the Continental, between which the teacher is expected to make his choice.

1. *The English Method.*

The following directions may be given to those who pronounce Latin in the English method :—

1. Form the habit of a *clear, accurate, and neat articulation*, with careful attention to the rules of Quantity and Accent (§§ 3, 4), — especially to the Quantity of Penultimate syllables, as given in § 78, III.

2. In the division of syllables, the English method adopts the following exceptions to the rule given in § 1 :—

a. A single consonant after any accented vowel in the antepenult except *u* is joined with it : as, *mon'itus, lu'cibus.*

But not with *a, e, o*, when the single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, is followed by two vowels, the first of which is *e, i, or y* : as, *mo'neo, pa'tria.*

b. In all other cases, two consonants between two vowels are separated: as, *mag'nus*, *pat'ribus*.

3. An accented vowel at the end of a syllable has its long English sound; every vowel followed by a consonant in the same syllable is sounded short: as, *mā'nē*, *mā'nē* (pronounced alike), *harp̄'ia*, *mō'neo*, *mon'itum*.

Final *a* is sounded as in the last syllable of *America*. In *tībi* and *sībi*, *i* has its short sound, as in *hit*. In *post* and its compounds *postea*, *postquam*, *o* has the long sound, as in the similar English word; but in *postēri*, etc., it is short.

4. The Diphthongs *ae*, *oe* have the sound of *e*: that is, long in *caelum*, *āmoen'us*; short in *hae'sito*, *āmoen'itas*.

In poetry, *ei* may be regarded as a diphthong, as in *dein'de*, having the sound of *i* in *mind*; *eu* in *Orpheus*, etc., as in *feud*.

When *ui* is pronounced as a diphthong, it has the long sound of *i*; thus *cui*, *huio*, are pronounced *ki*, *hike*.

5. Consonants have generally the same power as in English. Thus, before *e*, *i*, *y*, and the diphthongs *ae*, *eu*, *oe*, *c* has the sound of *s*, and *g* of *j*.

ch has always the sound of *k*, as in *chemist*.

h is not reckoned as a consonant in Latin.

6. Where a combination of syllables in Latin is similar to that familiar in English words, it is common to give it the same sound as in English. Thus, in *natio*, *martius*, *mentio*, and (more doubtfully) *concio*, *t* or *c* may have the sound of *sh*. So, too, rarely, with *s* or *x*, as in *Asia*, *anxius*.

But where the word is distinctly foreign to us, or the combination of syllables is less familiar, it is better to retain the pure consonant sound; as in *mentiō'tur*, *Min'cius*, *ca du'ceus*, *Ly'sias*, *axiō'ma*, *noctium*.

7. It is very common in English pronunciation, to slur or suppress the more difficult consonant sounds, particularly in such cases as *cn*, *gn*, *ps*, *pt*, *tm*, or *x*, at the beginning of a word; as in *Cnidus*, *gnotus*, *pseudo-*, *pteria*, *Tmolus*, *xylon*. But, in an accurate pronunciation of these, as *Latin* or *Greek* words, the full consonant sound will be retained.

Finally, there can be no correct rule to authorize the slipshod and slovenly habit of enunciation which is frequently allowed. To cultivate a clear and vigorous utterance of unfamiliar words, is one of the incidental benefits of careful instruction in a foreign tongue.

2. *The Continental Method.*

In many parts of the country, the Continental system has been adopted, either wholly or in part. This has the obvious advantage of bringing our pronunciation of Latin into harmony with that of the great majority of educated persons, and of coming nearer the actual pronunciation of the ancients. We can only approach to this, as it is not possible to decide in all points what it was; and, if it were possible, it is likely that it would sound too strange and foreign to obtain adoption.

Thus, in all probability, *c* and *g* were always pronounced *hard*, *j* and *v* like *y* and *w*, and *u* like *oo*. For example, *juvĕnes vicinārum urbium* (*the youths of the neighboring cities*) would be pronounced *yū'wen'ace wekenar'oom oor'be'oom*.

And besides, the distinction between long and short vowels must be observed, like time in music, each long syllable occupying double the time of a short one in pronouncing, — as in *pā'ter*, *mā'ter*, *sō'lis* (from *sōlum*), *sōllis* (from *sōl*), — a distinction nearly or quite impossible to English speech.

Neither is the usage of Continental scholars uniform, since each follows the analogy of his own language; so that there is considerable variance, especially in the sounds of the Consonants.

For example, *ce* and *ci*, or *ti* before a vowel, are frequently (following the custom of most German schools) pronounced *tsa*, *tse*: thus, *cedo* is *tsa'do*, and *otium*, *o'tse'oom*. But it is doubtful whether this has any authority in the usage of the Romans.

Some, again, following the Italian, would pronounce *c* before *e* or *i* like *ch* in *choose*, and give *z* the sharp sound of *ts*.

Others are of opinion that *qu* should be pronounced like *k*, and *cu* like *qu* in English: thus *qui* (nom.) would have the sound of *ke*, and *cui* (dat.) of *que*. But in Italian, *q* (as in *qui*, *qua*.) is always sounded as with *us*.

To those who prefer the Continental method, and desire at the same time to make it familiar and easy to the learner, the following rules are recommended:—

1. Practise carefully the pure Italian sounds of the Vowels (§ 2, near the end); remembering that the mixed sound, or "vanish" characteristic of English vowels (as of *u* in *rebuke*, *fortune*,) is never heard in the Italian, where each vowel represents a single sound, *u* being always like *oo* in *moon*, or *u* in *full*.

2. For the Consonants, follow the directions given above for pronouncing in the English method,—for example, making *t* always distinct and hard: as, **Mar-ti-us**, not *Marshus*.

3. It will greatly aid in giving the pure pronunciation to the vowels, to divide the syllables as in § 1 at the end: thus, **dō'mi-nus ma'gnus re'xērat**, *a great lord had ruled*.

But this rule does not apply to compound words, in which the words compounded are separated in the division by syllables: as, **ab-ibit**, **ob-latus**.

4. In Diphthongs, the sounds of the separate vowels should be preserved: thus **au** will have nearly the sound of *ou* in *loud*; and **æ** of *ei* in *height*. But **æ** and **œ**, which are often interchanged with **ē**, may have the same sound if preferred.

5. In languages derived from Latin, Accent is much less strongly marked than in English. Hence it is often well to indicate *quantity rather than accent*, where it can be done without offending an English ear,—especially in syllables long by position (§ 78, 1. 4), as in **immensus**.

The following rules of Accent, in addition to those given in § 4, are sanctioned by some of the best authorities:—

1. When an Enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short: thus, **dōā'que**, **āmārē've**, **tibi'ne**?

2. If the vowel of the Penult is short, **i** or **u** coming immediately before it is to be regarded as a semi-vowel, and pronounced like *y* or *w*, the accent going back to the syllable before: as, **mū'liēres**, **mō'nuērat**, **ō'ceānus**, **fī'iōlus**.

But in compounds, the accent will not be thrown back of the radical syllable: thus, **im-pī'ētas**, **ab-fu'ērat**.

The principles of Arrangement of words in Latin sentences, as given in § 76, should be carefully taught, and illustrated by examples.

LESSON I.

§§ 8, 9.

It is understood that only the larger print need be learned at first. In all paradigms, the pupil should be taught to separate the stem from the terminations, and should be required to inflect a large number of words as practice, and be exercised in giving forms off-hand.

The words given at the head of the Lessons should always be committed to memory, with their significations.

VOCABULARY.

amicitiā, *friendship.*

Gallia, *Gaul.*

Belgae, *Belgians.*

Gēnēvā, *Geneva.*

causā, *cause, reason.*

ripā, *bank.*

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Gallia. 2. Belgarum.¹ 3. causae. 4. ad² ripam. 5. ad Gēnēvam. 6. ā Belgis. 7. amicitiā confirmārē (to *confirm*).³

¹ There is no article in Latin; *a, an, or the* may be supplied according to the sense in translating.

Words which, like *Belgae*, mean male beings, are masculine, although belonging to the First Declension.

² In § 42, it will be seen that all prepositions govern either the accusative or the ablative; they will be introduced in every lesson, and the pupil should learn to which class each belongs. Their significations will be learned from the Grammar.

The preposition *ad* means *to*, which is also the sign of the dative case; but *when there is motion to a place, ad must be used.*

³ The preposition *a (ab)* usually means *from*; it means *by* when used with passive verbs to express the person *by whom* something is done. (§ 56, IV.)

⁴ The verb *confirmāre* is introduced to illustrate the use of the accusative case (§ 52, I.).

LESSON II.

VOCABULARY.

<i>angustiae</i> , narrow pass.	<i>Itālia</i> , Italy.
<i>cōpia</i> , abundance (pl. forces).	<i>lingua</i> , tongue, language.
<i>injūria</i> , injury, wrong.	<i>prōvincia</i> , province.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. cum cōpiis.¹ 2. prōvinciae. 3. linguā.² 4. in³ Itāliam.
5. cōpiarum. 6. ab⁴ injūria. 7. ex⁵ prōvinciā. 8. propter
angustias.¹ 9. per angustias.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. For the forces. 2. Into³ Gaul. 3. To³ the province of
Gaul. 4. With⁴ the forces of the Belgians. 5. From the bank.

¹ *Copia* has a different meaning in the singular and plural (§ 14, II.); *angustiae* is used only in the plural, like the English words *tongs*, *bellows*, *narrows*; and has a plural verb.

² The ablative without a preposition is used to express the *instrument* (§ 54, I.), which in English is variously expressed by the prepositions *by*, *with*, *in*, etc.; here, *in the language*.

³ The preposition *ad* (Lesson I. 2) means *to*; *in* means *into*.
⁴ In like manner *ab* (a before consonants) means *away from*; *ex*, *out of*. (§ 42, IV.)

⁵ When *with* expresses the *means* or *instrument* of action, it is rendered by the ablative alone; when it denotes accompaniment, the preposition *cum* is required. Thus, if this phrase means "*he marched with the forces*," etc., *cum* must be used; if it means "*he gained a battle with*," etc., the ablative alone.

It is a good rule to remember, that *with persons and places* (except names of towns) *prepositions are generally required*.

LESSON III.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Through Italy. 2. Out of^{1,2} Italy. 3. Away from^{1,2} Italy.
4. To³ Italy. 5. Into Italy. 6. The reason of friendship.
7. In the language of Gaul. 8. From Geneva to the province.

9. Out of Italy into Gaul. 10. Through the narrow pass¹ into the province of Gaul. 11. By² the Belgians. 12. On account of¹ the friendship of the Belgians.

¹ Very often two words in English mean the same as one in Latin: thus, *out-of* is *ex*; *away-from*, *ab*; *on-account-of*, *propter*; *narrow-pass*, *angustiae*.

² See Lesson II. 3.

³ When *by* expresses the instrument, it takes the ablative alone (Lesson II. 2); when it is used after a passive verb for the person *by whom* the thing is done, the preposition *a* or *ab* is required; this is almost always the case when it is used with persons. Here something has been done *by the Belgians*; if something is done *by treachery*, *by wisdom*, *by a blow*, etc., this expresses *means or instrument*.

LESSON IV.

SECOND DECLENSION. § 10.

When the stem of masculine nouns of this declension ends in *er*, it omits the terminations of the nominative (*us*) and vocative (*e*).

VOCABULARY.

āger, <i>field</i> .	lēgātus, <i>ambassador, lieutenant</i> .
ānīmus, <i>mind, temper</i> .	lōcus, ² <i>place</i> .
Aquitāni, <i>Aquitanians</i> .	nātūra, <i>nature</i> .
castra, <i>camp</i> .	Rhēnus, <i>the Rhine</i> .
frūmentum, <i>corn</i> .	Rhōdānus, <i>the Rhone</i> .
Germāni, <i>Germans</i> .	Sēquāni, <i>Sequanians</i> .
Helvēti, <i>Helvetians (Swiss)</i> .	sōlum, <i>soil</i> .
indīcium, <i>testimony, proof</i> .	vādum, <i>ford</i> .
jūdīcium, <i>judgment, trial</i> .	viā, <i>way, road</i> .
jūgum, <i>yoke</i> .	vincūlum, <i>bond, chain</i> .

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. cum³ Germānis. 2. ab⁴ Sequānis et Helvētiis. 3. in⁵ ānīmo. 4. per indīcium. 5. ex⁶ vincūlis. 6. cōpiā frūmentī. 7. ab⁴ Aquitānis. 8. trans Rhēnum. 9. lōci nātūrā. 10. cum lēgātis. 11. ex agris. 12. sub⁶ jūgum. 13. apud Helvetios. 14. ad jūdīcium. 15. vādis Rhōdāni. 16. per Sequānos viā. 17. ex castris.¹ 18. praeter agri solum.

¹ *Castrā* like *copiae* (Lesson II. note 1) has a different meaning in the singular and the plural. (§ 14, II. gen. *ōrum*.)

² *Locus* has its plural neuter, *lōca*. (§ 14, II.)

³ See Lesson II. Note 4.

⁴ See Lesson III. Note 3.

⁵ § 56, I. 1. — *In* here means *in*, not *into*.

⁶ *Ex* here has an unusual meaning: "He made a speech *out of his chains*" — that is, as we say, *in chains*.

LESSON V.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Among the Germans. 2. With¹ the forces of the Helvetians. 3. Of an abundance of corn. 4. By the nature of the places. 5. The fords across the Rhone. 6. Out-of the camp through the fields. 7. To the mind of the ambassador. 8. To the fords of the Rhine. 9. Through testimony. 10. With¹ a chain. 11. With¹ the ambassadors of the Belgians. 12. The road through the fields of Italy. 13. On-account-of the nature of the roads. 14. To confirm (*confirmāre*) the minds of the Sequani with¹ proofs.²

¹ Does *with* here mean accompaniment or instrument? (Lesson II. Note 4.)

² The verb should come last, and the adverbial expression (*with proofs*) immediately before it.

LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES. § 16 (to foot of p. 14), § 47.

VOCABULARY.

aedificium, building.

annus, year.

bōnus, good.

carrus, car, wagon.

Galli, Gauls.

inimicus, unfriendly.

magnus, great, large.

multus, much (plur. *many*).

noster, our.

oppidum, town.

pēriculum, danger, *peril*.

pōpulus, people.

privātus, private.

proelium, battle.

quōtidianus, daily.

rēliquus, rest of.

Rōmānus, Roman.

singūlus, single, one by one.

suus, his (own).

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. p̄r prōvinciam nostram. 2. bōno ānīmō. 3. nostrā linguā. 4. Inimico ānīmō. 5. reliqua¹ privāta aedificia. 6. magno cum p̄riculō. 7. f̄r̄s² quōtidianis proeliis. 8. dē P̄p̄ulo Rōmāno. 9. singulī carri. 10. multos annos.³ 11. oppida sua.⁴ 12. Helvēti reliquos¹ Gallos praecedunt (*excel*).

¹ "The rest of." (See § 47, VIII.)

² *Fere* is an adverb, qualifying the adjective *quotidianis*: "almost daily."

³ The accusative is used for the length of time that any thing lasts. (§ 55, I.)

⁴ *Suus* is the possessive adjective of the third person, but of all genders and numbers; referring always to the subject of the sentence or clause, and meaning variously *his*, *her*, or *their*: here translate "*their*."

LESSON VII.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Of a good people. 2. A large building. 3. With¹ great peril. 4. With¹ many Belgians. 5. Into a private field. 6. Across the Rhine, to² a town of the Germans. 7. To the Roman ambassadors. 8. Concerning the friendship of the Roman people. 9. Through our camp. 10. The rest³-of the private fields. 11. On-account-of daily battles. 12. A battle with⁴ the rest of the Gauls. 13. Of many places in⁵ our province.

¹ Does *with* here express *accompaniment* or *instrument*? (See Lesson II. Note 4.)

² Does *to* here express *motion*? (See Lesson I. Note 2.)

³ See Lesson VI. Note 1.

⁴ When *with* comes after words of fighting, the preposition *cum* must be used.

⁵ See Lesson IV. Note 5; also, § 56, I. 1.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. Through private fields. 2. With much corn. 3. Into a great province. 4. Of an unfriendly people. 5. In a private

building. 6. Many injuries. 7. Out of a good road. 8. In good places. 9. With the rest of the ambassadors. 10. By a great battle. 11. Of our friendships. 12. Through many narrow passes.

LESSON VIII.

The teacher should make clear the distinction between Active (Transitive) and Neuter (Intransitive) Verbs; and explain that, in general, only transitive verbs (those taking a Direct Object) are found in the passive voice.

The use of the predicate in apposition, after *esse*, or with a neuter or passive verb, should be fully illustrated and explained. Thus:—

When the verb *esse*, *to be*, is used to tell that any thing exists, it is called the Substantive verb: as, *ērāt quondam urbs Karthāgo*, *there was once a city Carthage*.

When it is used to connect the subject of a sentence with its predicate, or attribute, it is called the Copula: as *maxīma et ditissima urbs ērāt Karthago*, *Carthage was a very great and wealthy city*. The Copula is often omitted in Latin.

Here the predicate *urbs* is in Apposition with *Karthago* (§ 46), and must be in the same case. So, frequently, with neuter and passive verbs: as, *incēdit victor*, *he marches victorious*; *filius dēlēgitur lēgātus*, *his son is selected as deputy*.

Learn the personal endings of the Active Voice, § 28.

The verb *esse*, § 29.

NOTE. — The personal endings should first be thoroughly learned. The pupil should then be shown that the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses (those denoting incomplete action) are irregular in this verb; in the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect, or tenses of Completed Action, he should be taught to separate the stem *fū* from the termination, and made to learn the terminations of these tenses by themselves. He should then understand that these terminations are the same for these tenses in all verbs in the language, and should be practised in forming them for a variety of verbs. (See Supplement.)

The general rules for verbs, §§ 23–27, had better be brought in at a later stage.

TABLE OF TENSES.

ACTION COMPLETED.	ACTION INCOMPLETE.	INDEFINITE ACTION.
<i>Present Time</i> , Perfect	Present	Present
<i>Past Time</i> , Pluperfect	Imperfect	Aorist (Perfect)
<i>Future Time</i> , Future Perfect		Future.

There being no Aorist, or tense of indefinite past action, in Latin, the Perfect is used to supply its place. In this sense it is called Historical or Indefinite Perfect.

LESSON IX.

VOCABULARY.

absum,¹ *be absent, distant.*

amicus, *friend, friendly.*

acceptus, *acceptable.*

non, *not.*

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Gallia est. 2. est² in Prōvinciā. 3. erat in Galliā. 4. Helvētiis erat amicus. 5. non longē absunt.¹ 6. sunt extrā Prōvinciam trans Rhodānum. 7. ut⁴ essent. 8. angustiae sunt.³ 9. acceptus erat. 10. esse in animo.

¹ **Absum** is compounded of **sum** and the preposition **ab**; all the forms of the verb **sum** are joined to this preposition.

² The subject of the verb need not be expressed in Latin when it is a personal pronoun: **est** alone may mean *he is, she is, or it is*.

³ It is an idiom, or peculiarity, of the English language, to use the word *there* with the verb *to be* when the subject is indefinite; instead of saying "a stream is," we say "there is a stream." Thus, **ager est magnus** may mean, 1, the field is large; 2, a field is large; 3, (there) is a large field; 4, (it) is a large field; 5, the field is a large (one).

In Latin, the noun is made directly subject of the verb. Translate "*there is a narrow pass.*"

⁴ When **ut** means *that*, it takes the subjunctive: the present subjunctive after **ut** is usually translated by *may*, the imperfect by *might*, when it expresses intention or purpose; when it expresses simply result, it is translated by the English indicative.

LESSON X.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. The ambassador is unfriendly. 2. The buildings are good.
 3. The narrow pass¹ was in the province. 4. We² shall be friends. 5. He has been acceptable to the Germans. 6. The corn will be in many wagons. 7. The danger had been great. 8. That³ the fields may be good. 9. The ambassador proceeded⁴ from Italy through the province. 10. Our camp⁵ was on⁶ the bank of the Rhine. 11. (It) was our⁷ friend's field. 12. The Roman people was friendly⁸ to the Germans.

¹ See Lesson II. Note 1.

² See Lesson IX. Note 2.

³ See Lesson IX. Note 4.

⁴ *profectus est*.

⁵ Although *camp* is singular, the Latin word *castra* is plural, signifying a series of redoubts, and so an intrenched camp. (See Lesson IV. Note 1.) It takes a plural verb.

⁶ *On* is to be translated by *in* with the ablative.

⁷ *Our* agrees with *friend*: "the field of our friend." The word *it* should not be translated. (See Lesson IX. Note 2.)

⁸ *Amicus* is not only a noun, *friend*, but also an adjective, *friendly*.

People in English is usually a collective noun, taking a plural verb; but in Latin, *pōpulus* takes its verb in the singular, because it means not *the people* in general, but a particular community or nation.

LESSON XI.

FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE.

PARADIGM, VOCO, §§ 31, 34, I.

Rules for conjugations and stems. § 30, I. & II. (1)

Learn perfectly the terminations which are added to the first (or Present) stem, making the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses, the Present Infinitive and Participle, and the Gerund.

The terminations added to the second and third stems are the same as in *esse* (§ 33, I.), and are the same for all verbs in the language. (See full form, *amo*, T. 7.)

LESSON XII.

VERB-FORMS. §§ 22-27.

It is recommended that these general rules should not be learned until the paradigm of the first regular conjugation has been thoroughly committed. Any teacher who prefers can, however, invert Lessons XI. and XII.

LESSON XIII.

VOCABULARY.

Aquilēia, *Aquileia.*auxilium, *help, pl. auxiliaries.*bellum, *war.*confirmo, *confirm, strengthen.*do,¹ *give.*filia,² *daughter.*Germania, *Germany.*hiemo, *winter.*impéro, *command.*impetro, *obtain.*mātrīmōnium, *marriage.*mātūro, *hasten.*Norēia, *Noreia.*nūmērus, *number. [sion of.*ocoūpo, *seize, take posses-*oppugno, *attack, besiege.*persevero, *persist.*praesto, *excel.*pūto, *think.*regnum, *royalty, kingdom.*rōgo, *ask.*specto, *look.*

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. spectant. 2. non pūtabat. 3. impēravērat. 4. nūmērum impērat.³ 5. circum Aquilēiam hiēmabant. 6. amicitiā confirmare. 7. Norēiam oppugnavērant. 8. ut regnum ocoūparet. 9. a Sēquānis impetrat.⁴ 10. filiam suam in mātrīmōnium⁵ dat. 11. ut a Sēquānis impetrārent. 12. si bello persēvēraret.⁶ 13. cum⁷ praestarent.⁸ 14. rōgatum⁹ auxilium. 15. mātūrat.

¹ Observe that *do* is conjugated irregularly; the second and third stems being *dēd-* and *dāt-*.

² See § 9, 4.

³ Render "*demands.*"

⁴ This verb means *obtain-by-request*, and should have an object after it in the accusative. It may be rendered here *obtain-a-request*. Notice that a *hēre* is not used with a passive verb, and therefore means *from*, not *by*. (See Lesson III. Note 3.)

⁵ *in* with the acc. implies motion; that is, *to*, or *into marriage*; but we say *in marriage*.

* After *si* the subjunctive very often means *should*, and may be so rendered here.

⁷ *cum*, *since* (not the preposition), takes the subjunctive, which is to be translated precisely like the indicative.

⁸ Observe that *praesto* forms its second and third stems irregularly, both being *praestit-*.

⁹ Supine (see §§ 26, II; 74, I.); *to ask*.

LESSON XIV.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. We were commanding. 2. They will excel. 3. Think ye! 4. He had seized-upon the kingdom.¹ 5. We have confirmed our friendship. 6. He will not winter in Gaul. 7. He has obtained the corn by request.² 8. The Romans took possession of Gaul. 9. I shall winter with (my³) forces in Germany. 10. The ambassadors will have obtained the fields by request³. 11. He will give his daughter in marriage to Crassus.⁴ 12. That⁵ the troops might winter outside of Italy.

¹ As a rule, the verb should come last.

² See Lesson XIII. Note 4.

³ *My* need not be translated, as it is easily understood from the connection.

⁴ *Crassus* is declined like *servus*, second declension.

⁵ See Lesson IX. Note 4.

LESSON XV.

THIRD DECLENSION, § 11.

Learn the paradigms of Vowel Stems (§ 11, I.); also (Liquid Stems) *consul*, *honor*, and *pater* (§ 11, II.; T. 1.);

Notice that in these last the endings are added to the nominative as a stem.

In nouns with vowel-stems, the leading vowel (i) is in several of the cases absorbed in the termination; but remains in the genitive plural (*ium*), and as a secondary form in the acc. and abl. singular, and the acc. plural.

A few nouns, — as *sistis*, *thirst*, *tussis*, *cough*, *puppis*, *stern*, *sēcūris*, *axe*, *turris*, *tower*, — have, always or frequently, the accusative *im*, and the ablative *i* (§ 87, I. 5).

VOCABULARY.

Aedui, Aeduans.	hostis, enemy.
Arar, the river Arar (Saone).	linter, boat.
Caesar, Cæsar.	mēmōria, memory.
commeo, go to and fro, resort.	mercātor, merchant.
consul, consul.	pāter, father.
dōlor, grief, anger.	rātis, raft.
explōrātor, scout.	saepē, often.
fīnis, end (plur. territories).	

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. hostium. 2. consūlibus. 3. cum Cæsāre. 4. ad Cæsārem. 5. ē fīnibus suis.¹ 6. in Aeduōrum² fines. 7. rātibus ac linteribus. 8. magnō dōlōre. 9. per explōrātōres. 10. in Arāre. 11. patrum nostrorum mēmōriā. 12. per angustias et fines Sequānōrum. 13. mercātōres saepē commeant.

¹ See Lesson VI. Note 4. *Fīnis* means *end*; the plural, *fines*, means the *ends* or *limits* or *boundaries* of the territory, and so the *territory* itself. (§ 14, II.)

² A word or group of words qualifying a noun that is governed by a preposition, or has an adjective agreeing with it, is usually placed between the noun and the preposition or adjective.

LESSON XVI.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. I gave the boats to¹ the merchants. 2. The scouts of the consul were looking. 3. The Arar is outside of the province. 4. They had confirmed our grief. 5. Cæsar seized-upon the towns of the enemy.² 6. The forces of the Aeduans will winter in the territories³ of the Belgians. 7. The consul's⁴ father will be (our) friend. 8. (There)⁵ is in⁶ the province a great abundance of corn. 9. The Roman consul will command across the Rhine. 10. That⁷ Cæsar may besiege the towns of the Helvetians. 11. They had resorted to the province.

¹ Does *to* express motion? (See Lesson I. Note 2.)

² In English, *enemy* is sometimes a collective noun; in Latin, the plural must be used when a number are spoken of.

³ See Lesson XV. Note 1. ⁴ "The father of the consul."

⁶ *There* is an expletive in the English idiom, and should not be translated at all. (See Lesson IX. Note 3.)

⁶ When *in* means *in* (place where), what case does it govern? (§ 55, I. 1.)

⁷ See Lesson IX, Note 4.

LESSON XVII.

Learn the rest of the paradigms of Liquid Stems: *leo*, *nōmēn*, *ōnūs*, *corpūs*, *virgo*.

Notice that nouns in *-men*, *-do*, and *-go* have the genitive in *-inis*; other nouns in *o* usually have it in *-ōnis*; nouns in *us* (neuter) have *-oris* or *-ōris*.

VOCABULARY.

altitūdo, height, depth.

exemplum, example.

flūmen, stream, river.

fortitūdo, courage, bravery.

glōria, glory.

hōmo, man.

lātītūdo, breadth.

lēgio, legion.

mos, manner.

multitūdo, multitude.

mūnitio, fortification.

ōpus, work.

prōfectio, departure.

septentrio, north.

suspicio, suspicion.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *flūmen est Arar.*¹ 2. *in lātītūdīnem.*² 3. *altitūdo flūmīnis.* 4. *ad*³ *prōfectionem.* 5. *cum lēgiōnibus.* 6. *ad septemtriones.*⁴ 7. *citrā flūmen Arārim.*⁵ 8. *ā flūmīne Rhōdāno.* 9. *prōfectionem confirmant.* 10. *pro multitūdīne hōmīnum et pro glōria bellī atque fortitūdīnis.* 11. *nēque abest suspicio.* 12. *ōperis mūnitione.* 13. *mōre et exemplo pōpūli Rōmāni.*

¹ In what different ways may this be rendered? (See Lesson IX. Note 3.)

² *In* with the accusative here expresses *extension*, that is, something of the nature of motion; but in English we say, *in breadth*. (Compare Lesson XIII. Note 5.)

³ *Ad* had better be rendered here *for*.

⁴ This word is most commonly used in the plural.

⁵ Many names of rivers have accusative in *im*. (§ 11, I. 2.)

LESSON XVIII.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. The Rhine was a large river. 2. On account of the suspicions of the ambassador.¹ 3. To the men of our province. 4. Concerning the setting-out of the forces of the enemy.² 5. They had come-to-and-fro from the north. 6. Through the bravery of the legion. 7. Friendships were wanting. 8. Caesar was wintering with a legion on-this-side the river Rhone. 9. The width of the river was great. 10. That he may confirm his³ suspicions. 11. He will give to his father's friends (some)⁴ good fields. 12. The works of the Gauls are in the territories of the Belgians.

¹ See Lesson XV. Note 1.² See Lesson XVI. Note 2.³ *His*, that is *his own*, referring to the subject of the verb, the word is therefore *suus*. (See Lesson VI. Note 4.)

DECLINE: *bōnus vir*; *nostra prōvincia*; *magnum pēriculum*; *consul Rōmānus*; *lēgio Rōmāna*; *privātus dōlor*; *magnum ōpus*; *pāter noster*; *multa suspīcio*; *rēliqua multitūdo*; *singulus hostis*; *magnum flūmen*.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. By the example of the enemy (pl.). 2. On account of the suspicions of our friends. 3. Into the territories of the Æduans. 4. Into the Ædunan territories. 5. With a great multitude of wagons. 6. From the town to the river. 7. By (according to) our customs. 8. The memory of Caesar's grief. 9. Caesar's friendship for the Æduans (gen.).

LESSON XIX.

MUTE STEMS. § 11, III. 1-3.

VOCABULARY.

auctoritas, authority.*civitas*, state.*cupiditas*, eagerness.*hūmānitas*, humanity.*lex*, law.*mons*, mountain.*mors*, death.*obscus*, hostage.*plebs*, people.*tertius*, third.*urbs*, city.*virtus*, valor, manhood.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. post mortem. 2. āb urbe. 3. auctōritate Orgetōrigis. 4. plēbi acceptus erat. 5. ad Pyrenaeos montes. 6. cūpīditate regni. 7. Helvetii reliquos¹ Gallos virtute praecēdunt (*excel*). 8. ad oīvitates. 9. obsides tūti dent. 10. ab hūmānitāte Provinciae. 11. ut regnum in oīvitate sua² occūpāret. 12. inter montem Juram et flūmen Rhōdānum. 13. non longē a Tolōsātium finibus absunt. 14. in tertium annum prōfectionem lēge confirmant.

¹ See Lesson VI. Note 1.

² See Lesson VI. Note 4. The subject of the sentence being here in the third person singular, suā must be rendered "*his*."

LESSON XX.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. On account of the death of the consul, we shall winter outside of Italy. 2. By the authority of Cæsar they had seized upon the cities of the Gauls. 3. The legions were acceptable to the state. 4. There is a road from the mountains through fields and across rivers. 5. The merchants went-to-and-fro across the Pyrenees. 6. Persevere on account of the desire of glory. 7. He seizes upon the royal power in his state. 8. The Belgians are unfriendly to the rest¹ of the Gauls.

¹ See Lesson VI. Note 1.

LESSON XXI.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. § 16, II.

Adjectives of this class are inflected precisely the same as nouns (see § 11), having only a special form for some cases of the neuter.

The three classes — Consonant-stems, Vowel-stems, and Comparatives (Liquid Stems) — should be carefully distinguished, and the examples given in Tables 3 and 4 well committed to memory.

The meanings of words not already learned will be found in the Vocabulary at the end of the Book.

DECLINE: omnis multitudo; incredibile opus; vetus munio; vetus provincia; immortalis gloria; omnis injuria; omne proelium; lex Romana; mors accepta; incredibilis numerus; miser obses; tres Galli; tres Galliae; tria oppida; oriens suspicio; oriens dolor; vetus amicus; vetus regnum; plebs Romana; nostra auctoritas; mons Pyrenaeus.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Of our authority. 2. With the third legion. 3. By¹ the death of Caesar. 4. By¹ the Roman consul. 5. All the examples of Roman bravery. 6. To² our boats. 7. Through a great city. 8. Considering the eagerness of the Helvetians. 9. On-account-of our old friendships. 10. He confirms the state by (per) his authority. 11. On-account-of the breadth and depth of the river Rhone. 12. The daily departure of our legions. 13. The camp³ of the enemy is outside the city. 14. They confirmed the old laws of the state. 15. He will ask the consul concerning the war.

¹ Does *by* indicate means or voluntary agency? See Lesson III. Note 3.

² See Lesson II. Note 1.

³ Does *to* denote motion or advantage? See Lesson I. Note 2.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Gallia omnis. 2. cum omnibus copiis. 3. oppida sua omnia. 4. spectant in septemtriones et orientem solem. 5. consilio deorum immortalium. 6. incredibili lenitate. 7. omni tempore. 8. veteris incommodi. 9. frumentum omne. 10. cum virtute omnibus¹ praestarent.² 11. omnis civitas Helvetia. 12. tres copiarum partes.

¹ Omnibus is dative, governed by the preposition *prae* in the verb *praestarent*. (§ 51, v.) Understand *persons*.

² See Lesson XIII. Notes 7, 8.

LESSON XXII.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. The departure of our legions will confirm the designs of the enemy.¹ 2. All the boats and rafts were in² great danger. 3. All the province of Gaul was unfriendly to Caesar. 4. Through the designs of the immortal gods, we had been absent many years.³ 5. They will give hostages by⁴ the ancient custom of the state. 6. He had obtained by request an incredible number of wagons. 7. We think often concerning the ancient disasters of our city.

8. He hastens to seize upon the towns and private buildings between the Pyrenees and the territories of the Æduans.

¹ See Lesson XVI. Note 2.

² Use the preposition *in*.

³ See Lesson VI. Note 3.

⁴ See Lesson III. Note 3.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. Of the rising sun. 2. Into the old buildings. 3. Of great breadth. 4. Through daily suspicions. 5. With incredible courage. 6. With incredible numbers. 7. By all the merchants. 8. The legions one by one. 9. On account of old injuries. 10. The rest-of the rafts. 11. Of immortal memories. 12. Into a rising state. 13. Of the rising desires. 14. Through incredible dangers. 15. Of unfriendly men. 16. By many griefs. 17. All the injuries. 18. Out-of all the provinces. 19. By immortal examples. 20. Through the old roads. 21. Of immortal glory. 22. Of good laws. 23. With the third legion. 24. In the rising river. 25. Of incredible depth. 26. On account of immortal works. 27. Across all the rivers. 28. To our old friends.

LESSON XXIII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS. §§ 17, I., 41, I.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *in itinere*.¹ 2. *omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae*. 3. *vim hostium prohibere* (*to repel*). 4. *longissime absunt*. 5. *magnis itineribus*. 6. *apud Helvetios longē nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix*. 7. *erant omnino itinera duo*. 8. *flumine Rhēno latissimo atque altissimo*.² 9. *monte Jūrā altissimō*. 10. *per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos*. 11. *per agrum Sēquanorum et Aedunum iter in Santōnum fines*. 12. *ut paratiores ad omnia pericula essent*.

¹ § 11, III. 4.

² § 11, I. 5.

³ See § 17, v. 4.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. The cities of the Belgians were more unfriendly. 2. You are the most noble of all the Gauls. 3. The Roman people is more powerful. 4. Battles with our bravest enemies. 5. The Rhine is a broader and deeper river. 6. By a firmer road through the province. 7. We are prepared for the dangers of the journey. 8. Across the highest mountains. 9. On account of more incredible disasters. 10. The Helvetians were braver.

LESSON XXIV.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON. § 17, II.-V.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. cūterioris prōvinciæ. 2. quam¹ maximis itinēribus. 3. proximi sunt Germānis. 4. ab extrēmīs Galliæ finibus. 5. ad infēriorem partem flūminis Rhēni. 6. maxīmē plēbi acceptus erat. 7. cūm proximis civitatibus pācem et amicitiam confirmāre. 8. extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque² Helvētiorum finibus, Gēnēva.³ 9. vādīs Rhōdāni, quā minīma altitūdo flūminis erat, nonnumquam interdiū, sæpius noctū. 10. quā proximum iter in ultēriorem Galliam per Alpes fuit.

¹ See § 17, v. 5. ² § 46.

³ Que is an enclitic; that is, a word which is always joined to another word, still retaining its own meaning. (See Definitions.)

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. Through the further province. 2. The forces of hither Gaul. 3. With as great strength¹ as possible. 4. The Germans were nearest. 5. To² the extreme limits of the province. 6. From the lower part of the city. 7. With greater forces. 8. The best route. 9. On account of less dangers. 10. Into the furthest states of Gaul.

¹ Use the plural vires.

² Does to denote motion?

LESSON XXV.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. They were farther¹ distant from the camp of the Æduans. 2. With² great force³ they assaulted the town. 3. Upon⁴ the march, we shall ask concerning the enemy. 4. On account of the violence and depth of the river. 5. We shall be more ready for any⁵ violence. 6. They have been especially acceptable to the consul Crassus. 7. He hastened to assault Geneva, a town in Gaul, very near the Alps.⁶ 8. The best route is through the

upper fords of the river, where the width is least. 9. The people of the hither⁷ province is far¹ richer and more noble. 10. We were looking to the outmost parts of the city.

¹ *Far* is here an adverb, *longē*; when *farther* is an adjective, it is *ultērior*.

² Does *with* here mean accompaniment?

³ *Force*, *vis*; not *forces* (*troops*), which is *copiae*.

⁴ *In*, governing the ablative.

⁵ *Omnis*.

⁶ *Near* (*to*) *the Alps*; *Alps* must be dative.

⁷ *Citērior* means *more in this direction*; i.e., towards the speaker; *propior* means *nearer*; i.e., to any object to which reference is made. The *hither province* and *further province* were the ones respectively nearer Rome and further from it,—separated by the Alps.

LESSON XXVI.

GENITIVES IN *ius*. § 16, at end.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *ūna pars*. 2. *tōtius*¹ *Galliae*. 3. *aliud*² *iter nullum*. 4. *sine ullo mālēficiō*. 5. *unā ex parte*. 6. *prōvinciae*³ *tōti* quam maximum militum numerum impērat (erat omnino in *Galliā ultēriore* lēgio una). 7. erant omnino itinera duo: *ūnum* per *Sēquānos*, angustum et difficile, inter montem *Jūram* et flūmen *Rhōdānum*; *altērum* per *prōvinciam* nostram, multo *fācilius* atque *expēditius*.

¹ "The whole of." (Compare Lesson VI. Note 1.)

² The neuter of *altus* is *aliud*.

³ *Impēro* governs the dative of the person.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. Of no part. 2. By the violence of the other soldier. 3. The bravery of the other soldiers. 4. Through the whole of Italy. 5. A part of one legion. 6. To the whole state. 7. From the whole of Gaul. 8. An easier road. 9. The easiest route. 10. Without any suspicions. 11. Across another mountain. 12. By no authority.

LESSON XXVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION. § 12.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. de adventu. 2. a lacu Lëmanno ad montem Jüram
 3. militum concursu et tälis. 4. in conspectu exercitüs
 nostri. 5. ad Idüs Apriliis.¹ 6. a² senätu pöptili Römāni.
 7. sive cäsü, sive consilio deorum immortalium. 8. om-
 nium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque
 hümānitate Prövinciae longissimē absunt. 9. Aquitānia
 spectat inter occāsum sölis et septemtriones.

¹ This is an adjective, in the accusative plural (see § 11, i. 2).

² Does a here mean *from* or *by*?

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. The daily sight of the lakes. 2. On account of the arrival
 of the army. 3. By the authority of the senate. 4. From the
 west to the north. 5. From the lakes across the mountains.
 6. With the armies of Italy. 7. From the Ides of April.

LESSON XXVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION. § 13.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. uno die. 2. növis rebus. 3. die causae dictionis.
 4. dies erat ante¹ diem quintum Kälendas Apriliis.² 5. fī-
 dem et jusjürandum³ dant. 6. a. d. v.⁴ Idüs Apriliis.
 7. dömum⁵ rēditionis spe. 8. diebus viginti. 9. milia⁶
 passuum dūcenta quadrāgintā. 10. ad hōminum milia
 dēcem. 11. dies circiter quindēcim.

¹ This expression means "the fifth day before." (See § 56, i. 4; also § 83.)

² See Lesson XXVII. Note 1.

³ For the declension of *jusjürandum*, see § 14, ii.

⁴ For the declension of *dömus*, see § 12, 2. It is to be rendered "home" after *rēditionis*. (§ 55, iii. 2.)

⁵ See § 18, i. 3.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. A journey of many days. 2. Before the fourth day. 3. Without hope of assistance. 4. It was a new thing. 5. By the faith of the army. 6. Three miles. 7. On account of the new hope.

LESSON XXIX.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. The army of the Roman people is between Lake Geneva and Mt. Jura. 2. The arrival of the soldiers will be pleasing to the consuls. 3. He gave his pledge and an oath to the army. 4. The narrow pass across the mountains was difficult. 5. Cæsar took possession of the bank of the river with the fifth legion. 6. The arrival of the army had confirmed the designs of the senate. 7. The soldiers of our army will take possession of the kingdom of Italy. 8. On account of the hope of Cæsar's arrival, the consul took possession of the camp. 9. The return of Cæsar with his legions will confirm our hopes. 10. The Germans, with a large army, are on the march into Italy.

LESSON XXX.

THE CARDINAL NUMBERS. §18, I.

LESSON XXXI.

THE ORDINAL AND DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS. §18, I. II.

LESSON XXXII.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. With two legions. 2. With seventeen legions. 3. Of one accident. 4. On account of three deep rivers. 5. Through three provinces. 6. Of two days. 7. Thirty-seven ships. 8. Of three paces. 9. By three lakes. 10. With the armies of four provinces. 11. Across two mountains. 12. Three roads across the Alps. 13. Five thousand soldiers. 14. With ten thousand

soldiers. 15. An army of eighteen thousand men. 16. With an army of twenty-five thousand men. 17. Twelve miles. 18. A journey of three miles. 19. Of two hundred boats. 20. The soldiers of the seventh legion. 21. The thirtieth town on the road. 22. The forty-fifth legion. 23. The arrival of the fifty-ninth legion. 24. The ninth day before the Kalends of April.¹ 25. The third day before the Ides of April. 26. The consuls, with three legions apiece.² 27. The two² camps of the two armies. 28. Ten² men in each² boat.

¹ See Lesson XXVII. Note 1.

² Use the distributive numeral. (See § 18, II. 2.)

LESSON XXXIII.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. § 19.

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, and has the construction of a noun in the sentence in which it stands.

A Personal Pronoun expresses *person*; that is, the word itself shows whether it is used for the first person (the one speaking), the second (the one spoken to), or the third (the one spoken of).

Latin has no Personal Pronoun of the Third Person, except (in the Oblique cases) the Reflective *sui*, which is used only to refer to the subject of the sentence, and is masculine, feminine, or neuter, singular or plural, according to this subject.

For a Personal Pronoun of the Third Person not referring to the subject of the sentence, it is necessary to use a Demonstrative Pronoun, generally *is*, but sometimes *hic* or *ille*. When no special emphasis is needed to designate the subject of a verb, the personal or demonstrative pronoun is not used.

Each of the Personal Pronouns has a Possessive Adjective derived from it, and denoting possession: thus, *meus*, *my*; *noster*, *our*; *tuus*, *vester* (*voster*), *your*; *suus*, *his*, &c.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. § 20.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are used to point out objects. They are properly Adjectives, and are declined as adjectives of the First and Second Declension. All of them are, however, more or less irregular; the nominative singular generally ends in *e*, and the neuter nominative and accusative in *d*.

Much of the irregularity is only apparent; thus to the stem *h* add the case-endings and an intensive affix *c*, and we have *h-um-c* (*hunc*), *h-am-c* (*hanc*), *h-o-c* (*hoc*), *h-a-c* (*hac*).

The Demonstratives, particularly *is*, are used without a noun for a Personal Pronoun of the Third Person. Thus *is* (*vir*), *he*; *ea* (*mulier*), *she*. There is no Possessive Adjective corresponding to this, but the Genitive case is used for possession, just as in nouns: as, *ejus equus*, *his horse*; *eorum equi*, *their horses*; like *Caesaris equus*, *militum equi*.

LESSON XXXIV.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *inter se*.¹ 2. *hi*² *omnes*. 3. *in eo* *itinerare*. 4. *sēcum*.³ 5. *reliqui*⁴ *fugae sēse* *mandāvērunt*. 6. *ad eas res*. 7. *post ejus*⁴ *mortem*. 8. *cum his* *quinque lēgionibus*. 9. *ad eam partem* *ōceāni*. 10. *his rebus*. 11. *eodem consilio*. 12. *minimē saepē* *ad eos*² *mercātōres* *commeant atque ea*² *important*. 13. *hi*² *sunt extrā* *Prōvinciam* *trans Rhēnum* *prīmī*. 14. *eodem tempore* *Aedui* *Ambarrī* *nēcessārii et consanguīnei* *Aeduorum*.

¹ Translate "*among themselves*," or "*together*."

² See § 47, III. Translate "*these men*," "*those things*," "*the rest*" (of the men), etc. (§ 47, III., IV.)

³ This is two words, — *cum se*. The preposition *cum* is always appended to the personal and relative pronouns (§ 19, at end).

⁴ Here *is* is used for a personal pronoun of the third person; in the genitive case, it is equivalent to a possessive.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. Of your¹ boats. 2. With² us. 3. On account of these suspicions. 4. By you yourselves.³ 5. This river and that mountain. 6. Across these mountains and those rivers. 7. I⁴ will give (to) you these things. 8. By the same route, through the same fields. 9. Without you and your forces.

¹ The possessive *vester*.

² See Note 3 above.

³ *ipse*.

⁴ Express the word for *I*, because it is contrasted with *you*.

LESSON XXXV.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS, ETC. § 21, § 48, & L

Every pronoun strictly refers to some noun which may be called its antecedent; but the Relative Pronoun has its antecedent generally in the same sentence.

The Relative introduces a subordinate clause, in which it serves at once as a substantive and as a connective, joining this "relative clause" to the principal clause. It takes the gender, number, and person of the noun which it represents, but, like any noun or pronoun, has its own construction in its own clause.

Qui, in its different numbers and genders, corresponds to all the English relatives, *who*, *which*, and *that*. Where we use the indefinite relative, *whoever* or *whatever*, with no antecedent, the Latin has *quicumque*.

The Interrogative Pronoun, **quis** (*qui*), like the relative, always stands first in its clause.

Quis is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun, generally with the prefix *ali-* or the conjunctions *si*, *if*; *ne*, *lest*; or *num*, *whether*.

The relative is often used as an adjective, to be rendered *which*; as, *quod iter*, *which road*, where the English would be *the road which*.

DECLINE: *quis vir*; *quae pars*; *quod flumen*; *haec res*; *illud iter*; *iste mons*; *meus adventus*; *Idūs Aprīles*; *hūmānitas tua*; *quidam mercātor*; *ille cāsus*; *lātius flumen*; *altior mons*; *lācus Lemannus*; *qui lōcus*; ¹ *ea castra*; *altior lācus*; *exercitus noster*; *spes firma*; *aliquis dōlor meus*; *tōtus dies*; *magnus hic exercitus*; *Gallia ultērior*; *alter consul*; *idem hōmo*; *Idem tempus*; *tres angustiae*; *quae causa*; *omnis exercitus Rōmānus*.

¹ Notice that *lōcus* is neuter in the plural, *lōca*, *lōrum*.

LESSON XXXVI.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *quā de causā*. 2. *quibus itineribus*. 3. *quā die*. 4. *monte Jūrā altissimo, qui¹ est inter Sēquānos et Helvē-*

tios. 5. ab Océlo quod est citioris Prōvinciae extrēmum, in fines Vocontiorum ultērioris Prōvinciae. 6. cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiāno dux Helvētiorum fuerat. 7. ad eam partem Océāni quae est ad Hespāriam. 8. iter in Santōnum fines, qui nōn longē a Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in Prōvincia. 9. tres lēgiones, quae circum Aquilānam hīmabant.

¹ § 48, 1.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. The city which we have seized. 2. Your suspicions which I have confirmed. 3. Whose¹ father is good? 4. Of some² virtues. 5. The troops with which. 6. The general to whom we will give this camp. 7. Through a certain³ province. 8. Of which day. 9. Who is the leader of the Roman army? 10. These mountains, across which is our way. 11. Who commands beyond the river Rhone? 12. There are some brave soldiers outside of Italy.

¹ "The father of whom."

² aliquis.

³ quidam.

LESSON XXXVII.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. These two¹ camps were on² the banks of the river which is between Gaul and Germany. 2. These same two legions which have been with Cæsar are by far the bravest of all. 3. That mountain, on which were the forces of the enemy, is very high. 4. At the arrival of the embassy, in which the chief man³ is a certain Divico, who had been the leader of the Helvetians in the same war. 5. From that part of the province which is nearest to the Alps. 6. Of the very lofty mountain Jura, which is on this side of the river Arar. 7. In our army are some Gauls, who have committed themselves to our faith. 8. Before the departure of the tenth legion, we shall confirm its fidelity by oaths. 9. In each⁴ camp are five⁴ thousand men.

¹ Notice that *castra* is a plural noun; use the distributive. (§ 18, II. 2.)

² in, governing the ablative.

³ Chief man, princeps.

⁴ Use the distributive. (§ 18, II.)

LESSON XXXVIII.

PERSONAL ENDINGS OF PASSIVE VOICE. § 28.

PASSIVE VOICE OF VOCO. § 32.

DEPONENT VERBS. § 35, I.

When the action expressed by a Transitive Verb (see Lesson VIII.) is reversed, and is represented, not as *done* by the subject to the object, but as *suffered* by the subject from the act of some other person, or the effect of some other thing, the verb is said to be in the Passive Voice.

That which, in the Active Voice, was the object, becomes now the subject, and that which was the subject is usually put in the Ablative,—if a *thing*, the ablative alone; if a *person*, the preposition *ab* is required (§ 56, IV.). See Lesson III. Note 3.

Thus, *the consul* (or *fear*) *seized upon the city*,—*consul* (or *tīmor*) *occupavit urbem*: but *the city was seized with fear*,—*urbs timore occupata est*; or, *by the consul*,—*a constūle*.

In English the Passive Voice is expressed by the verb *to be*, with the past participle: as, *I am called*; *he was killed*; *they will be heard*, etc. But generally the present tense of *to be* with this participle is equivalent to the perfect tense in Latin; thus, *he is killed* means not, *somebody is killing him now*, but *he is already dead*, i.e., *has been killed*, and is therefore equivalent to the Perfect Tense in Latin. In like manner, this is expressed in Latin by the present tense of *esse*, with the participle: as, *occisus est*.

There is no form in English which quite corresponds with the present passive in Latin. Thus the phrase *dōmus aedificatur* may be rendered *the house is building*, *the house is a-building* (obsolete), or, *the house is being built*; but neither form is good, for all cases. Hence, in English, we prefer the active to the passive construction wherever it is possible, especially in the tenses of incomplete action (Present and Imperfect).

It will be observed, that a large proportion of Deponents are neuter or reflexive in their meaning; and that few of them take a direct object in the accusative. Some, as *eximīnor*, *accuse*, are occasionally used as Passives (See § 35, I., 6).

LESSON XXXIX.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Allöbröges nūper pācati erant. 2. ut igni¹ crēmaretur. 3. ea res est² Helvētiis per indīcium ēnunciata. 4. Caesāri cum nunciatum esset, mātūrat. 5. is pāgus appellābatur Tigurinus.³ 6. a Sēnātu pōpūli Rōmani āmīcus appellatus erat. 7. summo māgistrātui⁴ praeērat, quem Vergōbrētum appellant Aedui, qui creātur annuus.⁵ 8. ipsorum linguā Celtae, nostrā⁶ Galli appellantur. 9. agros pōpūlabantur. 10. quod suā victōriā tam insōlenter glōriarentur. 11. grāviter eos accūsāt, quod ab iis non sublēvētur. 12. quod iter per prōvinciam tentāvisset.

¹ § 11, i. 2.

² est belongs with *enunciata*, forming a perfect indicative passive.

³ *Tigurinus* means the same thing as *pagus* (i.e., it is the name of the district), and therefore stands by apposition in the same case.

⁴ See Lesson XXI. Note 1.

⁵ Translate by the adverb, "annually," "once a year." (§ 47, vi.)

⁶ Understand *linguā*.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. The road had been seized. 2. Italy will have been subdued. 3. The Gauls are not accused by me. 4. Cæsar will be aided by the Æduans. 5. These boats have been obtained by request.¹ 6. Our forces will ravage Aquitania. 7. You boasted often. 8. They attacked our province in war. 9. Cæsar was chosen consul. 10. The towns had been burned by the Germans. 11. Great dangers were announced. 12. You are called Romans. 13. These things have been announced. 14. The ambassadors will be accused by the Belgians.

¹ To obtain by request, *impētro*.

LESSON XL.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. § 54, x.

When a phrase or clause is introduced in a sentence by way of explanation, not depending on the main structure of

the sentence, its Subject and Predicate are put in apposition, in the Ablative. This is called the Ablative Absolute.

The Predicate in Ablative Absolute is most frequently a participle; but may be either a noun or adjective. The Subject is usually a noun or pronoun; but may be impersonal, — that is, a Substantive clause or phrase.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. regno occupato.¹ 2. datā facultate. 3. depoptulatis agris. 4. locis superioribus occupatis. 5. omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis. 6. Sequanis invitis. 7. Marco Messalā et Marco Pisone consilibus. 8. quod eo invito iter per provinciam tentavissent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobroges vexavissent. 9. is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, Lucio Pisone Aulo Gabinio consilibus. 10. convocatis eorum principibus, in his² Divitiāco³ et Lisco,³ qui summo magistratui⁴ praeerat (quem⁵ Vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus), graviter eos accusat, quod tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur.

¹ In Ablative Absolute translate the noun first, as if it were nominative, then the participle or the adjective or other noun with the word "being:" thus, *regno, the royal power, occupato, having been seized; Caesare, Caesar, consule, being consul.*

This will give a literal translation, but not in idiomatic English, which would be "having seized the royal power," or "when the royal power had been seized." (See § 54, x.)

² his refers to *principibus*; in his = *among these*.

³ These words are, like *principibus*, in Ablative Absolute with *convocatis*.

⁴ See Lesson XXI. Note 1.

⁵ quem refers to the officer implied in the office (*magistratui*).

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. The road having been seized. 2. Italy having been subdued. 3. The Gauls having been accused by me. 4. Caesar having been aided by the Aeduans. 5. Caesar being unwilling. 6. The Germans being unfriendly. 7. Piso being consul. 8. The Senate being called together. 9. The troops hastening. 10. The road being easy. 11. The province being laid waste. 12. These things having been announced. 13. The river being very deep. 14. The Gauls boasting. 15. The magistrates accusing me.

All these phrases are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute. The pupil should be taught to vary the expression, so as to make idiomatic English: as, (2) *When Italy had been subdued*; (6) *Since the Germans were unfriendly*.

LESSON XLI.

The Ablative Absolute should generally be rendered by other constructions in English. A passive may often require to be changed into an active participle, or an independent demonstrative clause may be introduced.

Thus, *regnō occūpāto, tres annos impērāvit* (*the royal power having been seized, he reigned three years*), would be best expressed in the English idiom by *having seized the royal power*, etc.; *when he had seized*, etc.; or, *he seized the royal power and reigned three years*.

In the following sentences, to be turned into Latin, the English idiom is employed, and the clauses which the student is to convert into the Latin idiom of the Ablative Absolute, are printed in italics.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. *These suspicions having been confirmed*, he was accused by Piso. 2. *When the consul's arrival had been announced*, Aquileia was assailed by the seventh legion. 3. *Having taken possession of the road by night*, he destroyed by fire the private buildings of the Germans. 4. *The fidelity of the Æduans is announced*, and they are called friends by the Senate. 5. Messala will lay waste the fields, and lay siege to the town. 6. *Although the Senate was unfriendly*, Cæsar subdued Gaul in eight years. 7. *Without our permission*,¹ the merchants have resorted to our province.

¹ That is, "*we being unwilling*."

LESSON XLII.

SECOND CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. §§ 31, 32.

If the First Conjugation has been thoroughly learned, the others will present very little difficulty.

The pupil should be shown that scarcely any thing is necessary but to change *a* to *e*, or *e* to *a*, to turn the terminations of the first stem into those of the Second Conjugation; also that *e* is inserted before *o* in the Present Indicative, and before the terminations of the Present Subjunctive.

It should be noticed here that the verbs of the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations are more irregular in the formation of the second and third stems than those of the First. These stems should in all cases be thoroughly committed to memory.

LESSON XLIII.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. magnum nūmērum hābebat. 2. ea¹ quae pertīnent. 3. suis finibus² eos prohibent. 4. civitatī³ persuāsit. 5. ex eo oppīdo pons ad Helvetios pertinet. 6. mons altissimus⁴ impendebat. 7. pertinent ad infēriorem partem flūminis Rhēni. 8. Lēgationis Narciū et Verudoctius principem lōcum obtinebant. 9. Persuādent Raurācis. 10. fines in longitūdinem milia passuum dūcenta et quadragintā pātebant. 11. propterea quod aliud iter hāberent nullum. 12. ibi Centrōnes et Graiocōlli et Caturīges, locis sup̄erioribus occūpatis, itinere⁵ exercitum prohibere cōnantur.

¹ ea = *those things*. (See § 47, III.)

² The ablative is used to express *separation*, — “from their territories.”

³ Persuadeo governs the dative.

⁴ See § 17, v. 4.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. The king has large forces. 2. They will persuade the Senate.² 3. Our territories extended to the river. 4. This man had held the chief place. 5. All these places¹ lay open. 6. We shall have had many friends. 7. You have not persuaded me.² 8. They had had large fields. 9. These mountains overhang. 10. You have prohibited my departure.

¹ Plural loca.

² See Note 3, above.

LESSON XLIV.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. una pars continetur Gärumnä flūmine. 2. undīque lōci nātūrā Helvēti continentur. 3. auctōritate Orgetōrigis permōti. 4. in eo itinere persuādet Castico,¹ Catamantalēdis filio,² Sēquāno,³ cujus⁴ pāter regnum in Sēquanis multos annos⁵ obtinuerat, et⁶ a Sēnātu pōpūli Rōmani āmicus appellatus erat, ut⁷ regnum in civitate suā⁸ occuparet, quod⁹ pater ante hābuerat; Itemque Dumnōrigi¹ Aeduo, frātri⁹ Divitiāci, qui¹⁰ eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat, ac¹¹ maximē plēbi acceptus erat, ut¹² idem cōnaretur persuādet, eiūque filiam suam in mātrimonium dat.

¹ See Lesson XLIII. Note 3. ² In apposition with Castico.

³ Relates to Castico.

⁴ § 55, I.

⁵ Et connects obtinuerat and appellatus erat, both of which have the same subject, pater.

⁶ Ut occuparet depends upon persuadet. (See § 70, I.)

⁷ Sua refers to the subject of occuparet, i.e., Castico.

⁸ Relates to regnum.

⁹ In apposition with Dumnorigi.

¹⁰ Relates to Dumnorigi.

¹¹ Connects obtinebat and erat.

¹² Ut conaretur depends upon persuadet.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. The royal power was held by Dumnorix. 2. We are bounded by the mountains. 3. They will be prohibited. 4. The bridges had been held by us. 5. You will have been excited by them. 6. The Helvetians were bounded by rivers and mountains. 7. We shall not be moved to suspicion. 8. I was influenced by his advice. 9. All had been influenced by our arrival.

LESSON XLV.

THIRD CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE §§ 31, 32.

The Third Conjugation will present rather more difficulties than the Second, having as its characteristic vowel sometimes

ø and sometimes ʏ as well as the connecting vowel ē in the tense-endings of the Imperfect Indicative. (§ 78, III. 2.)

Let it be observed that the Present Indicative gives precisely the same changes of vowel, from o to ʏ and ü in the Active, and to ø, ʏ, and ü in the Passive, which are already familiar in the Future of the First and Second Conjugations. Of other modifications, observe that, —

1. The Present Subjunctive has the same terminations as the Second Conjugation, omitting the e.

2. The Future Indicative in the Third and Fourth Conjugations differs from the First and Second, in having *am*, *es*, etc., instead of *bo*, *bis*, *bit*.

3. The Imperative Active, as in all Conjugations, drops *re* of the Infinitive leaving ø for the second person, which is changed to ʏ in the other forms.

4. The Infinitive Passive has *i* added to the first stem instead of changing the *e* of the Active into *i*, as in the other Conjugations: thus, *vōc-äre*; Pass., *vōc-äri*: but *ræg-äre*; Pass., *ræg-i*.

LESSON XLVI.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *finam partem incolunt Belgae.* 2. *eorum una pars attingit flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones.* 3. *Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam coegit.* 4. *Boios socios¹ sibi adsciscunt.* 5. *Gallos a Belgis Matrōna et Sēquāna dividit.* 6. *oppida sua omnia incendunt.* 7. *Proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum² continenter bellum gerunt.* 8. *Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus³ eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.*

¹ In apposition with *Boios*. ² See § 21, I., 2.

³ See Lesson XLIII. Note 2.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

* 1. The Germans inhabited these fields. 2. Our territories border on the banks of the river. 3. Aquitania touched the

ocean. 4. We will carry on war with them. 5. You have often contended with us. 6. A river separates these two provinces. 7. They had collected three thousand men. 8. We inhabit these cities. 9. Cæsar will have waged war many years. 10. They set all the ships on fire. 11. Who will receive us as allies? 12. This year you are continually contending.

LESSON XLVII.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Orgetōrix dēligitur. 2. Rēlinquebatur una per sē-
quānos via. 3. regni cōpīditate inductus. 4. mātūrat ab
urbe prōficisci. 5. complūribus his¹ proeliis pulsus. 6.
oppīdis suis vicisque exustus. 7. nāvibus junctis. 8. om-
nibus fortūnis sōciorum consumptis. 9. persuādent Rau-
rācis ūti,² eodem consilio³ ūsi, unā cum iis prōficiscantur.
10. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partes tres, quarum unam
incolunt Belgæ, āliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui⁴ ipsōrum
linguā Celtæ, nostrā Galli appellantur.

¹ Ablative Absolute with *pulsus*; *compluribus* belongs with *proeliis*.

² ūti (short ū) = ut; the verb *utor* has long ū.

³ *utor* governs the ablative. (§ 54, III.)

⁴ The antecedent of *qui* is *ū* understood, which is, like *Belgæ* and *Aquitani*, subject of *incolunt*. (§ 48, III.)

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. I have been selected by them. 2. On that day he will set out. 3. The war having been waged¹ seven years. 4. All our property² had been divided between us. 5. The city is consuming³ with fire. 6. The Boii are received as allies. 7. We are compelled to inhabit these territories.

¹ Ablative Absolute.

² Our (property) things; neuter plural. ³ Present Passive.

LESSON XLVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. §§ 31, 32.

The Fourth Conjugation substitutes *i* for *ā* of the First, and *ē* of the Second; but has, in most of its forms, the terminations of the Third Conjugation, prefixing *i*.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. castella commūnit. 2. ea dies vēnit. 3. ad Genēvam pervēnit. 4. Totius Galliae imperio¹ pōtiri. 5. Caesar sentiebat. 6. Rēpēriebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar. 7. diem dicunt, quā die ad ripam Rhōdāni omnes convēniant.

¹ See § 54, III.

• ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. They fortify the camp. 2. The city had been fortified. 3. We shall have arrived at Rome. 4. That day will come to us. 5. They have found these things. 6. These things have been found by them. 7. You will assemble outside of the town. 8. He had not perceived my friendship. 9. Come with me. 10. Your designs are perceived.

LESSON XLIX.

A few very common verbs of the Third Conjugation end in *io*, and insert *i* before the terminations added to the first stem, wherever the verbs of the Fourth Conjugation do; that is, before *a*, *ē*, *o*, and *u*.

Thus, *fūg-is*, *fūg-iunt*, *fūg-iēbam*, *fūg-iam*, *fūg-iens*. (§ 30, III.)

The *i* is omitted before *ē* or *i* (as in *fūgis*, *fūgimus*), except in the future, *fugiet*.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. inīitum cāpit Gallia a flūmine Rhōdāno. 2. magno dōlōre affliciebantur. 3. is sibi lēgationem ad civitates suscepit. 4. Orgetōrix mortuus est. 5. Belgae ab extrēmīs finibus Galliae oriuntur. 6. per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. 7. Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere cōnantur. 8. is, M. Messālā et M. Pisone consūlibus, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit. 9. eo opere perfecto.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. These soldiers will take the city. 2. He had accomplished this work. 3. We shall all die. 4. They will withdraw themselves. 5. We have attempted to do these things. 6. They have arisen from these beginnings. 7. The river Rhine rises among

the Alps. 8. The cities are taken by our general. 9. You were making a bridge across the lake. 10. Our allies are affected with grief.

LESSON L.

RULES OF CONJUGATION. §§ 30, 33, 34.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. That bridge extended from Cæsar's camp to the farther bank of the river. 2. I shall be influenced in this thing by the advice of (my)¹ best friends. 3. The Helvetians had inhabited the fields between Mt. Jura and the river Rhine. 4. *Since* (his)¹ *army was beaten*² in this battle, Messala marched out of the province on the same day. 5. *Having fortified* (his)¹ *camp*,² he burned all the boats and wagons. 6. The mountains across the lake were held by Divico with five thousand soldiers. 7. The Gauls, with whom we have continually waged war, set the city on fire. 8. Our province is separated from the territories of the Gauls by the river Rhone. 9. On the fourth day before the Ides of April, Cæsar *defeated the enemy and*² laid waste their fields. 10. On the same day *Piso died, and*² all the citizens were affected with great grief.

¹ Not to be expressed in Latin.

² Ablative Absolute.

LESSON LI.

IRREGULAR VERBS. §§ 29, III.; 37, I., II., III., VII.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *ut spātium intercōdere posset.* 2. *Dumnōrix grātīā et largitione plurimum poterat.*¹ 3. *his*² *cum persuādere non possent.* 4. *si*² *perrumpere possent conati.* 5. *quam maximis*⁴ *pōtest itineribus, in ultēriōrem Galliam contendit.* 6. *si quid vellent, ante diem v. Idūs Aprīlis rēverterentur.* 7. *quam*⁴ *plūrimas cīuitates sibi*⁵ *hābere*⁶ *obstrictas*⁷ *vōlebat.* 8. *id si fieret.* 9. *per explōratores Caesar certior*⁸ *factus est.* 10. *ubi de ejus adventu Helveti certiores*⁸ *facti sunt, lēgatos ad eum mittunt.* 11. *rātibus complūribus factis.* 12. *Iter ab Arāre Helveti āvertērant, a quibus discōdere nōlebat.*

- ¹ Understand some such word as "to do."
² Dative after *persuadere*. ³ Depends upon *conati*.
⁴ § 17, v. 5. ⁵ Depends upon *obstrictas*.
⁶ Depends upon *volebat*. ⁷ Agrees with *civitates*.
⁸ In the predicate, agreeing with the subject of the verb, "he is informed." (§ 46, fourth example.)

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. He cannot come with us. 2. You will be able to break through these fortifications. 3. He wished to become friendly to me. 4. We had been informed concerning those dangers. 5. He does not wish to set out. 6. Messala will be made consul. 7. The Belgians could not boast. 8. He became unfriendly. 9. Who wishes to be received as ally?

LESSON LII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*). § 37, IV., V., VI., VII.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *propter angustias ire non pōterat*. 2. *ut per suos fines eos ire pāterentur*. 3. *Boii in agrum Noricum transierant*. 4. *ad eam partem pervēnit quae nondum flūmen transierat*. 5. *cum his quinque lēgionibus ire contendit*. 6. *id Helvetii rātibus ac lintribus junctis transibant*. 7. *erant omnīno itinera duo, quibus itineribus¹ dōmo² exire possent*. 8. *civitati persuādet ut de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent*. 9. *Rhōdānus nonnullis lōcis vādis transītur*. 10. *hi omnes linguā, institutis, lēgibus inter se diffērent*. 11. *dōmum³ rēditionis spe sublata*.

¹ § 48, III.

² § 55, III. 1; "from home."

³ § 55, III. 2; "home" after *reditionis*.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. They wished to go upon¹ the bridge. 2. We shall not suffer the enemy to cross over. 3. Those men differed very greatly from us. 4. They went out *without our permission*.² 5. Your suspicions had been removed. 6. He differs in these things. 7. You have taken away our hopes. 8. Cross the river in this boat.

¹ In with the accusative.

² Ablative Absolute.

LESSON LIII.

PARTICIPLES. §§ 25, 72.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Caesar cohortatus suos proelium commisit. 2. cum omnibus suis carris secuti. 3. ut victis resistēret, ut venientes sustinēret. 4. in nostros venientes¹ tela coniciebant. 5. cum suppliciter locuti fientes pacem petissent.² 6. reductos in hostium numero habuit. 7. Boios petentibus Aeduis ut in finibus suis collocarent concessit. 8. frumentum quod portaturi erant. 9. eodem usi consilio.³

¹ As they came up. ² For petivissent (see § 33, III. 1.).

³ Ablative governed by usi (§ 54, III.).

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. He marches hastily from Italy, and attacks the Helvetians while intending to cross the river. 2. Thus he spoke and departed in tears. 3. After they had crossed¹ the Arar, he followed them, as they fled. 4. If condemned, he will suffer² the penalty. 5. He came to see the fields. 6. The third year after the conquest of³ the Germans, he returned to⁴ Gaul. 7. By giving a great number⁵ of hostages, they obtained the peace (which they asked for).⁶

¹ transgressos. ² do. ³ Perfect passive participle. ⁴ in.

⁵ Ablative Absolute. ⁶ To obtain what one asks for is impetro.

LESSON LIV.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES. §§ 26, 73, 74.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent. 2. ut peritiores ad omnia pericula subeunda¹ essent. 3. homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. 4. ad eas res conficiendas. 5. itineris faciendi. 6. ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important. 7. perfacile factu. 8. legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. 9. ad deliberandum.

¹ subeunda agrees with pericula, which is governed by ad; but it is to be translated like the gerund, "for undergoing," and as if it governed pericula (§ 25, I.). So the fourth, fifth, and sixth sentence.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

1. Of boasting. 2. By persuading. 3. For¹ attempting. 4. By accusing the senate. 5. Of harassing the army of the enemy. 6. For the purpose of making a bridge. 7. By burning the boats. 8. For the purpose of accomplishing this thing. 9. Of inhabiting the cities.

¹ *ad* with the accusative.

LESSON LV.

THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE. §§ 52, VI., 67, and I. 2.

All the common forms of the Latin language have now been learned ; but, before proceeding to the detailed study of the Syntax, it will be well to become familiar with the three constructions which are most peculiar and characteristic of this language, one of these being that of the Gerundive, illustrated in the last lesson.

The most important of all is the use of the Accusative as subject of a verb in the Infinitive, when depending upon a verb of saying, thinking, etc., in quoting *indirectly* ; that is, not in the very words used. To express the same thing in English, we commonly use the conjunction *that*.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. Orgetōrigem causam dicere coēgerunt. 2. pontem, qui erat ad Gēnēvam, jūbet rescindi. 3. angustos se¹ fines habere arbitrantur. 4. biennium sibi sātis esse duxerunt. 5. cibāria quemque² dōmo³ efferre jubent. 6. se ad eam rem pāratos esse arbitrati sunt.

¹ *se* is accusative, subject of *habere*, depending upon *arbitrantur*. The direct statement would be *habemus, we have* ; as the persons that *have* are the same as those that *think* (that is, the subject of *habere* is the same as that of *arbitrantur*), *se* is used in quoting it ; *they think that they themselves have*, — *they think themselves to have*.

² From *quisque*.

³ § 55, III. 1.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. Cæsar thinks. 2. He says that Cæsar thinks. 3. Cæsar says that he (himself) thinks. 4. We boast. 5. Cæsar says that we boast. 6. He is able. 7. He thinks that he (himself) is able.

LESSON LVI.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. totius Galliae¹ sese pōtiri posse spērant. 2. legatis respondit diem se ad dēlibērandum sumpturum.² 3. Cæsāri cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnari, māturat ab urbe prōficisci, et quam maximis pōtest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genevam pervēnit. 4. dēmonstrant sibi³ præter agri solum nihil esse rēliqui.⁴ 5. Allōbrōgibus sese vel persuasuros,⁵ quod nondum bōno animo in populum Rōmanum viderentur, existimabant; vel vi coacturos, ut per fines suos eos ire pāterentur. 6. nēgat se, more et exemplo populi Romani, posse iter ulli per prōvinciam dāre: et si vim facere cōnentur, prohibiturum⁶ ostendit.

¹ § 50, IV. 6. ² Supply *esse*. ³ § 51, VI.; "that they have."

⁴ Limits *nihil* (§ 50, II.); "nothing left."

For further practice in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive, it is recommended to take such of the Additional Exercises in Lessons 39, 43, 44, 46, 47, 48, 49, 51, and 52 as are adapted to this purpose, and turn them into the indirect construction after *dicit*, *he says*; *negas*, *you deny* (or *say not*); *putamus*, *we think*; *arbitrantur*, *they suppose*; or *existimavit*, *he thought*. It will be well to have as much practice as possible on this important and difficult principle.

LESSON LVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. § 39.

The third peculiar construction of the Latin language is that of the impersonal use of neuter verbs in the passive voice (§ 39, 5), where the English would use the active voice with a personal subject.

Thus, *persuādeo tibi, I persuade you*; but not *p̄rsuādēris* (*you are persuaded*), which would be bad Latin; but *persuādē-tur* [*persuasion is wrought*] *tibi a me, you are persuaded by me* (§ 61, III.). So *ventum est, there has been coming done*; that is, *somebody has come*: *pugnātur, fighting is going on*; that is, *somebody is fighting*.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *flūmen est Arar, quod per fines Aedūorum et Sēquā-norum in Rhodānum influit incredibili lēnitate, ita ut ōcūlis,¹ in utram partem fluat, iūdicari non possit.²* 2. *rōgare, ut ejus vōluntate id sibi³ facere liceat.* 3. *Cae-sāri rēnunciatur.⁴*

¹ Ablative, belongs with *iūdicari*.

² The subject of *possit* is the clause *in utram partem fluat*; but in English we use the word *it*. This is therefore not a true impersonal use of *possit*, because it has a subject; but it is a common construction in Latin to use a phrase or clause as subject of the verb, where the English uses the subject *it*.

³ Dative after *liceat* (§ 39, 2).

⁴ An impersonal use, — “word is brought.” Still, as in the other case, the true subject of the verb is the message that was brought.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN.

1. It will be permitted (to) us to go. 2. Word has been brought. 3. It is easy¹ to cross the river. 4. (Somebody) had come. 5. Fighting was going on.

¹ The adjective agrees with the phrase “to cross the river,” which is the true subject of the verb, and must be neuter (§ 47, IV. 3).

LESSON LVIII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS, *continued*.

The true subject of a verb used impersonally is very often an accusative with an infinitive, or a clause beginning with *ut* or *quod*. (See § 70, II., III.)

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH.

1. *eōrum una pars, quam Gallos obtinēre dictum est,¹ inīitium cāpit a flūmine Rhodano.* 2. *damnatum² poenam³*

sēqui oportebat, ut igni cremarētur. 3. civitati persuasit perfacile⁴ esse totius Galliae imperio⁵ potiri. 4. perfacile factu esse illis probat cōnata perficere: non esse dūbium quin tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētī possent. 5. concedendum⁶ non pūtabat. 6. legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dicērent sibi esso in animo iter per prōvinciam facere. 7. Caesar non exspectandum⁶ sibi⁷ statuit, dum in Santōnes Helvētī pervēnirent. 8. Caesari rēnunciatur Helvētīs esse in animo iter in Santōnum fines facere. Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum pēriculo prōvinciae⁸ futurum,⁸ ut hōmīnes bellīcosos, populi Rōmani inimīcos, finitimos haberet.

¹ The subject is **quam Gallos obtinere**; translate "it has been said that," etc.

² Agrees with **eum** understood, object of **sequi**; translate "if condemned."

³ Subject of **sequi**; the phrase **damnatum . . . sēqui** is subject of **oportebat**; translate "it was necessary that," etc.

⁴ Agrees with the subject of **esse** (**totius . . . potiri**).

⁵ See § 54, III

⁶ Supply **esse**. The impersonal expression **concedendum est**, *it is necessary to yield* (§ 40, II. at end), becomes an accusative with infinitive (*that it was necessary to yield*) after the verb of thinking, **putabat**.

⁷ "By him" (self), § 51, VIII.

⁸ Dative.

LESSON LIX.

Learn §§ 35, II., 36, 38, 40, 42, I., II., and III.

LESSON LX.

GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX. § 75.

RULES I., II., III., IV., V., VI., 1 & 2, VII., 1 & 3, VIII., 1, 5 & 6, IX., X., XI., XII.

The above rules have been amply illustrated, and some of them carefully explained, in the preceding lessons. In the lessons that follow, the other principles of Syntax will be introduced,

PART SECOND.

STORY OF THE HELVETIAN WAR.

(B.C. 58.)

[FROM CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR: Book I. Chapters 1-29.]

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tris, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent important; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut

I. est divisa, § 49. — omnis, § 47. — partes, § 56, I. 1. — quarum, § 48, I. — qui, § 48, III., Note. What is the construction of the antecedent of qui? — ipsorum, § 50 & I. — lingua, § 54, I. Is this cause, means, or specification? — Celtae, § 46. The rule of apposition applies also to the predicate after neuter or passive verbs. See Lesson VIII. — hi, § 47, III. — dividit, § 49, I. (top of p. 59). — Horum, § 50. II. 2. — ea, 47, III. — animos, § 73 & IV. — Germanis, § 51, I. — reliquos, § 47, VIII. — finibus, § 54, VI.

ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septemtriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septemtrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septemtriones.

II. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent; perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex re homines bellandi

Eorum, § 50, II. 1. — quam, §§ 52, VI.; 67, & I. 2.

II. Messala, § 54, X. — regni, § 50, III. & 1. — conjurationem, § 52, I. — civitati, § 51, III. — copiis, § 54, II. ("Accompaniment," etc.). — omnibus, § 51, V. — imperio, § 54, III. — id, § 51, III., end. — hoc, § 54, I. — vagarentur, § 70 & II. — bellandi, §§ 50, III. 2; 73, II.

cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

III. His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare, jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppetere, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaledis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum

passuum, § 50, II. 2.

III. *pertinerent*, § 65, I. (i.e., such things as). — *comparare*, § 58, IV. — *suppetere*, § 64, I. — *sibi*, § 51, V. — *annos*, § 55, I. — *senatu*, § 56, IV. — *ei*, § 51, II. — *factu*, § 74, II. — *obtenturus esset*, § 67, II. — *Galliae*, § 50, II. — *possent*, § 65, II. — *illis*,

confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

iv. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coëgerunt: damnatum poenam sequi oportebat ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam ad hominum milia decem undique coëgit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per eos ne causam diceret se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogèrent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

v. Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant comburunt, ut domum redi-

§ 51, I. (dat. com. et incom.). — Galliae, § 50, IV. 6.

IV. die, § 13, end. — eos, § 54, I. end. — diceret, § 57. — rem, § 54, I., middle. — conaretur, § 62, I, and at end. — arbitrantur, § 64, IV., note.

V. nihilo, § 54, v., at end. — conantur, § 57, II. — finibus, § 54, VI., at end. — exeant, § 70. — rem, § 51, I. (top of p. 64). — arbitrati sunt, § 57. III. (foot of p. 78). — portaturi erant, § 40 I domum, § 55 III & 2

tionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum iis proficiscantur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Geneva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat a. d. v. kal. Aprilis L. Pisone A. Gabinio consulibus.

VII. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per quemque, § 68, III. — domo, § 55, III. 1. — consilio, § 54, III. — oppugnant, § 33, III. 1.

VI. itineribus, § 48, III. — possent, § 65. — locis, § 55, III. 5. — transitur, § 52, II. & 1. — animo, § 54, II. (quality). — conveniant, § 64. — a. d. v., § 56, I. 4 (middle).

provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci; et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat: erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una: pontem qui erat ad Genevam jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Nameius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, Sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum; rogare ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat L. Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat; tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat convenirent, legatis respondit, Diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum: si quid vellent ad Idus Aprilis reverterentur.

VIII. Interea ea legione quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo

VII. numerum, § 51, III. (end). — obtinebant, §§ 27, II. 1; 49, I. — sibi, § 51, VI. — esse, § 67 (used impersonally). — haberent (also vellent, below), § 67, II. — jugum, § 56, I. I. — convenirent, § 62, II. (also § 57).

VIII. milia, § 55, II. — pedum, § 55, II., Rem.

opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat, Se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare, et si vim facere conentur prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii ea spe dejecti navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnumquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt.

ix. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transeant.

conarentur, § 66, II. — possit, § 64, II. — spe, § 54, VI. — possent, § 67, I. 1. *si* is used here interrogatively, as *if* sometimes is in English: as, "I cannot tell if this be so."

IX. his, § 51 III. — possent, § 63, III. — eo, § 54, X. — patiantur, § 70 I.

x. Caesari renuntiatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni quam fecerat T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant ex hibernis educit, et qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsus, ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

xi. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri

X. *Helvetiis*, § 51, vi. — *esse*, § 70. — *civitas*, § 48, iii. (foot of p. 57). — *futurum ut*, § 67, iii. 1 — *occupatis*, § 72 & 3.

XI. *rogatum*, § 74, i. — *meritos esse*, § 57, iv. (also § 67, i. 2, supply *dicentes*).

agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiores faciunt sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non expectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

XII. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes adgressus, magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset, patrum nostrorum memoria L. Cas-

vastari, § 57, IV., Rem. — debuerint, § 57, I. — fuga, § 54, II., first remark. — reliqui, § 50, II. — quibus, § 48, IV. — sibi, § 51, VIII.

XII. flumen, § 52, III. 2. — adgressus, § 72, I.

sium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio quo Cassium interfecerant.

XIII. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, cum id quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt, cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare agit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, cum hi qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam

quae, § 48, III., end.

XIII. faciendum, § 40, II. — ut transirent, § 70. — Cassiano, § 47, V. — constituisset, § 57, III. — reminisceretur, § 67, II. 1. — incommodi, § 50, IV. 1. — adortus esset, § 63, I. — suis, § 47, III. Rem. — ne, § 24, III. 1 (foot of p. 25). — quam, § 17, V. 2.

dolo contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam proderet.

In this chapter we meet with the first example of a long and complicated Oratio Obliqua, such as is very common in Latin. The speech of Divico is given, not in his own words, but in the indirect construction, depending on the verb of saying implied in *agit*.

It begins with a Conditional Sentence, which in the Oratio Recta would read: *si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet* (or *faciat*), *in eam partem ibunt* (or *eant*) *Helvetii, ubi eos Caesar constituerit*. The words actually used would have been *ibimus* and *constitueris*; but it is as well to take the third person.

Let the student here learn § 59, I. to IV. 2. From this it will be seen that either the future indicative or present subjunctive may be used here, according to the degree of definiteness to be expressed: *constituerit* is in one case future perfect indicative; in the other, perfect subjunctive, representing the future perfect (§ 57, I., end).

The principal verb, that of the Apodosis, is then thrown into the future infinitive, *ituros esse*, by § 67, I. 2, when all subordinate verbs will become subjunctive by § 67, II. The tenses become secondary (*faceret, constituisset*, etc.) after the historical present *agit*, by § 57, II. The subjunctives, *reminisceretur, tribueret*, etc., represent the imperatives (or subjunctives used imperatively) *reminiscere* (§ 58, III.) or *reminiscaris* (§ 68, I.) *ne tribueris* (§ 58, III., Prohibitions), etc. The subjunctive pluperfect *adortus esset* would be subjunctive perfect *adortus sis*, in the oratio recta, by § 63, I.; as being the reason which (according to Divico) influenced the mind of Cæsar.

It is not thought necessary to analyze with the same minuteness the examples of oratio obliqua in Chapters XIV., XVII., XVIII., and XX. If the explanations given above are once mastered, it will be easy to apply the same principles to the others; and it is better that the scholar should have an opportunity to do this for himself.

xiv. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria teneret; atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intelligeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter glorarentur, quodque tam diu se impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuriis quas ipsi sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere non dare consuerint: ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato, discessit.

XIV. respondit, § 27, III. 1. — eo, § 54, I. — eo... quo, § 54, v., end. — fuisset, § 59, IV. 2. — deceptum, § 67, I. 2., end. — oblivisci, § 68, II. — num, § 71 & I. — tentassent, § 70, IV. (also § 67, II.). — posse, § 67, II. 2. — sint, § 61, II. — Aeduis, § 51, I. (dat. com. et incom.). — consuerint, § 57, I. (aoristic use).

In the oratio obliqua of this chapter, the verbs are at first sec-

xv. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui, cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublatis Helvetii quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere, nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia, hostem rapinis pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinque aut sex milibus passuum interesset.

xvi. Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod essent publice polliciti flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septemtrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento quod flumine Arari navibus subvexerat, propterea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvetii averterant, a

ondary, depending upon the historical perfect **respondit**; but in stating the general maxim, **consuesse deos immortales**, etc., primary tenses are used, and the rest of Caesar's speech employs the tenses used by the speaker at the time.

XV. **videant**, § 64. — **cupidius**, § 17, v. 1. — **milibus**, § 54, v.

XVI. **frumentum**, § 52, III. — **essent polliciti**, § 66, I. — **flagitare**, § 49, III. — **ne . . . quidem**, § 41, II. 5. — **eo**, § 54, III. — **Arari**, § 55, IV.

quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat (quem Vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem) graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur: praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus queritur.

XVII. Tum demum Liscus, oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere ne frumentum conferant quod praestare debeant; si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia praeferre; neque dubitare debeant quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam quod necessario rem coactus Caesari enuntiavit, in-

oporteret, § 67, II. — annuus, § 47, VI. — hostibus, § 54, X.

XVII. conferant, § 65, II., end. — debeant, § 66, II. — possint, § 59, IV. 1. — Aeduis, § 51, V. (active compounds). —

telligere sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam quam diu potuerit tacuisse.

XVIII. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem Divitiaci fratrem designari sentiebat, sed quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alios civitates collocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos quod eorum adventu potentia ejus deminuta et Divitiacus frater in anti-

quam diu, § 22, 1. Quam is a relative adverb, having for its antecedent the correlative tam (diu) understood: "so long as."

XVIII. solo, § 52, III. (1), end. — audacia, § 54, II., end. — pretio, § 54, IX. — redempta agrees with portoria. — audeat, § 35, II. — domi, § 55, III. 3 (whole). — causa, § 54, I., 2nd. Rem. — Biturigibus, § 56, I. 1, end. — nobilissimo, § 17, V. 4. — nuptum, § 74, I. — Helvetiis, § 51, III.

quum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani, non modo de regno sed etiam de ea quam habeat gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus; nam equitatui quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant Dumnorix praeerat; eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

xix. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat; nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet verebatur. Itaque prius quam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet et quotidianis interpretibus remotis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit quae ipso praesente in consilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae

Imperio, § 54, x. — quaerendo, § 73, v. — auxilio, § 52, vii.

XIX. traduxisset, § 63, i. — causae, § 50, ii. 4. — offenderet, § 64, iii. — sint dicta, § 69, Note.

separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuatur, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

xx. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, Ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum: qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit uti et rei publicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat ostendit, quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

xxi. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus

XX. lacrimis, § 54, II. Rem. — se, § 67, v. — doloris, § 50, II. 3. — avert. § 67, III. 1. — faciat, § 64, IV., & § 68, II., end. tanti, § 54, IX. 1 (whole). — voluntati, § 51, II., end.

hostes sub monte consedissee milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T. Labienum legatum pro praetore cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognoverant summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere quo hostes ierant ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII. Prima luce cum summus mons a T. Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem a Labieno occupari voluerit ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros expectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium timore perterritum quod non vidisset pro viso sibi

XXI. consilii, § 50, I. 1. XXII. summus mons, § 47, VIII. — passibus, § 55, II. Distance. — die, § 54, X.

renuntiasset. Eo die quo consuerat intervallo hostes sequitur, et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

xxiii. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum xviii aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent, siye eo quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

xxiv. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque qui sustineret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum, ita uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiones quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat et omnia auxilia collocaret, ac totum montem hominibus compleret; interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri et eum ab his qui in superiore acie constiterant muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima acie rejecto nostro

XXIII. diei, § 50, at end. — rei frumentariae, § 51, iv. — quod . . . existimarent, see note to Chap. XXVII. — eo, § 54, i.

XXIV. legionum, § 50, i. 2; also § 54, ii., end.

equitatu, phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

xxv. Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tollerèt, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disjecta, gladiis dstrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, quum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut diu jactato brachio praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre, et quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto adgressi circumvenere, et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies ut victis ac submotis resisteret, tertia ut venientes sustineret.

xxvi. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se ut coeperant in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt: nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab

XXV. *inflexisset*, § 59, IV. 3. — *nostros*, § 52, II. 2.

XXVI. *pugnatum est*, § 39, 5. — *alteri*, § 22, 2.

hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subjiciebant nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re juvarent; qui si juvissent, se eodem loco quo Helvetios habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

xxvii. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco quo tum essent suum adventum exspectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos qui ad eos perfugissent poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa circiter hominum milia vi ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti ne armis traditis supplicio afficeren-

tur, sive spe salutis inducti quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

xxviii. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit: reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos unde erant profecti reverti jussit, et quod omnibus fructibus amissis domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit ut iis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida vicosque quos incenderant restituere jussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit quod noluit eum locum unde Helvetii discesserant vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem atque ipsi erant receperunt.

xxix. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem rela-

XXVII. *existimarent*, § 63, i. Strictly speaking, this verb does not express an alleged cause (they thought that because, etc.,) but is a real fact (they actually did think): but verbs of thinking often take the subjunctive after *quod* by the analogy of this rule.

XXVIII. *tolerarent*, § 65, iv. 2.—*atque*, § 43, 2.

tae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia cclxiii, Tulingorum milia xxxvi, Latobrigorum xiv, Rauracorum xxiii, Bolorum xxxii: ex his qui arma ferre possent ad milia xcii. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eorum qui domum redierunt censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

XXIX. Write out these numerals in full.

IN the chapters given above, it is assumed that the pupils have acquired a perfect mastery of the Etymology, and of so much of the Syntax as has been given in Lesson LX. It is designed that the Syntax should now be the chief object of study. The rules referred to at the bottom of each page should be thoroughly learned (each rule is referred to only once), and *the examples illustrating them perfectly committed to memory*. The sentences hereafter given, to be turned into Latin, furnish sufficient practice upon these rules as they are introduced. The Notes which follow are intended partly to make the narrative more intelligible and clear; partly to aid the pupil in some of the more difficult constructions, and in comparing the Latin with the English idiom.

NOTE TO CHAP. XXVI. — In the year 1860, numerous burial mounds near the place of this battle (in which considerably more than 100,000 human beings must have perished) were opened, and found to contain skeletons buried face downward, with knives, bracelets, rings, and hair-pins of bronze, very similar to the relics discovered shortly before in the lake-dwellings of Switzerland. It has been conjectured that these lake-dwellings were among those destroyed at the time of the Helvetic migration. — *De Saulcy, Campaigns of Caesar in Gaul.*



NOTES.

EARLY in the year 58 B.C., the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul (France), in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, — possibly, with the hope of being masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura mountains on the south and west; and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had wrought them so well up to this enterprise, that his flight and death — when he was charged with guilty conspiracy and put on trial for his life — caused no delay. The attempt was held in check, during a fortnight's parley, till sufficient breastworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance; it was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier, when they were overtaken by Cæsar; who, by a few light skirmishes, and two bloody battles, forced them relentlessly back to their own territories, with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign, lasting only from March to June, is called the Helvetian war.

The period of this campaign was five years after the conspiracy of Catiline, and the same year with the exile of Cicero. At this time, Cæsar was a man of forty-two; dissolute and a spendthrift, but of great courage, of restless and resolute ambition, and very active in political affairs. Two years before, he had made a league, or political bargain, with Pompey, the soldier of the aristocracy, and Crassus, a man of vast wealth and greedy ambition, to divide the prizes of power. This was called the First Triumvirate. As its result, Cæsar was Consul the following year

(B.C. 59) with Bibulus, a feeble tool of the aristocracy, who left the reins entirely to his bold colleague. It was the custom for the consul, at the close of his term, to go as Proconsul or military governor into some province to govern it for a year. Cæsar obtained for five years the two provinces of Gaul; viz., Northern Italy, called Gallia Citerior (or Cisalpina), including Illyria, north and eastward from the Adriatic; and South-eastern France, called Gallia Ulterior (or Transalpina), or simply Provincia—the modern *Provence*. Of the populations of Gaul, only a very small part were in regular and quiet submission to Rome. The Belgæ, at the north, with the half-piratical tribes on the seaboard, maintained a rude and fierce independence; the Aquitani, near the Pyrenees, were mere petty insulated clans; the Allobroges, on the flank of the Alps, had been very recently subdued, or, as the Romans called it, pacified; while the north-eastern frontier was constantly threatened by the invasion of wild German tribes from across the Rhine, or by such military inroads as the ill-fated expedition of the Helvetians. The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, chief of the tribe of Suevi.

Gaul was accordingly held by most Romans to be a place of honorable but dreary banishment; by Cæsar, as the nursery of soldierly fame and power. He was in Rome when the first news of the Helvetian movements reached him; but hastily made his preparations, and joined his forces in Gaul, travelling a hundred miles in a day. The eight campaigns which followed resulted in the complete subjugation of the whole country, together with the invasions of Britain and Germany, carrying among the barbarians the terror of the Roman name; and they prepared the way for those campaigns of the Civil War, in which Cæsar defied the authority of the Senate, destroyed the forces of Pompey, and became perpetual Dictator, B.C. 46.

The following brief outline will aid in a clear understanding of the narrative:—

1. Orgetorix, an Helvetian chief, plans the invasion of Gaul; conspires with the chiefs of several Gallic tribes; is brought to trial, escapes, and is put under the ban; soon afterwards dies.—Chap. II.—IV.

2. The Helvetians complete their preparations, and gather near

the Rhone, requesting leave to pass peaceably through the Province. Cæsar delays them by pretexts, while he hastily throws up an earthwork to prevent their crossing the river. They attempt the passage, but are repulsed. — Chap. v.—viii.

3. Forming a league with the Sequani, they penetrate and ravage the territory of the Ædui, friends of Rome, who solicit protection. Cæsar, levying a force of upwards of 30,000, overtakes and cuts to pieces their rear-guard (Tigurini) at the crossing of the Arar (*Saone*). — Chap. ix.—xii.

4. An embassy of the Helvetians, headed by the aged Divico, leads to no result. A cavalry-skirmish, in which the Romans are worsted, together with the delay of supplies, shows the bad faith of a party among the Ædui, headed by Dumnorix; who is arrested, but spared on the intercession of his brother Divitiacus, and put under close guard by Cæsar. — Chap. xiii.—xx.

5. Cæsar makes preparations for attack, but is prevented by a false alarm, and moves towards Bibracte. The Helvetians, now well in advance, turn about for battle. They are forced to retreat to a hill, and attempt to flank the Romans; but are completely routed, and fly toward the north. — Chap. xxi.—xxvi.

6. They are at length forced to surrender. Six thousand escape, but are retaken and put to death. The remainder are compelled to return to Helvetia, and rebuild the villages which they had destroyed. — Chap. xxvii., xxviii.

The campaign extends along the Rhone, from Lake Geneva to its junction with the Saone (Arar) at Lyons; thence a few miles northerly and westwardly, near the head-waters of the Saone and Loire.

CHAPTER I. line 1. **Gallia**: that is, free Gaul, excluding the Roman province. It included, I., the Belgæ in the north (modern *Belgium*, *Picardy*, and *Champagne*); II., the Aquitani in the south-west (*Gascony* and *Guienne*); III., the Celts or Gauls proper in the remaining portion, which was rather more than all the rest together. The country was extensively covered with forests, especially at the north, and was well provided with roads and bridges. The people were tall, of fair complexion, of restless, sanguine temperament, and addicted to fighting; but skilled in many arts, — the Aquitani, especially, in mining and engineering. The entire population is estimated to have been about seven mil-

lions. There was no capital city, or political centre; but one tribe (as now the Ædui) had a certain military predominance over the others.

tris (for **tres**): this was the usual form of the accusative till about fifty years after Cæsar's death (see § 11, i. 2); remaining in this and a few other words, for a considerable time after the termination **es** became more common.

2. The usual form of enumeration is **unus, alter, tertius**; here, **aliam** is used for **alteram**.

4. **lingua**, — that is, there are three groups of languages, or dialects: the Belgian, which was probably a German or Teutonic dialect; that of the Aquitani, which was Iberian or Basque; and the Celtic, or Gallic proper. The Celtic race — with its two great branches, the *Gallic* (Scotch or Gaelic and Irish) and *Cymric* (Welsh and Armoric or Breton) — once occupied nearly all of western Europe; at present it is found only in Wales, Brittany, Cornwall, and in some districts of Ireland and the Scotch Highlands.

6. **dividit**: in the singular, since the two rivers make only one boundary.

7. **cultus** signifies the outward marks of civilization; **humanitas**, its mental refinement.

8. **Provinciae**: used as a proper name, — the modern *Provence*.
minime . . . , **saepe**: *least often*.

9. **mercatores**: these were traders or pedlars, mostly from the old Greek city of Massilia (*Marseilles*); they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and waggons. A very common article of traffic (as with our Indians) was intoxicating drinks; which, especially, as Cæsar says, "tend to demoralize the temper."

11. **Germanis**: the name is held to mean *men of war*.

13. **Helvetii**: here classed as Gauls.

virtute: *manly vigor* (**vir**, *man*).

16 (p. 50). **eorum una pars**: the antecedent of **eorum** is **Gallos** (line 13), the people being put for the territory.

17. **obtinerere**: *to hold close, or occupy*.

18. **Rhodano**: a Greek name, meaning *of roses*, perhaps given by colonists from Rhodes, to indicate the beauty of the region; but by some derived (with **Rhenus**) from a root meaning *flow*.

20. **septemtriones**: a word used either in the singular or plural, referring to the northern constellations of the great and little Bear; the old word **triones** means *oxen*, the constellation (consisting of seven bright stars) being thus called *seven-ox team*.

CHAP. II. 1. **nobilissimus**: this refers to distinction of family or birth.

2. **M. Messala, L. Pisone**: for these and similar abbreviations of proper names, see § 83; also § 15.

consulibus: two consuls at a time held the chief magistracy at Rome; they were elected annually, and entered on their office the first of January. The date was B.C. 61.

3. **conjurationem**: this is a league sworn to fidelity by oath (**juro**), generally for some criminal purpose.

nobilitatis: this word (like **civitas**) is here a collective noun, signifying the whole body of nobles or chiefs.

5. **perfacile esse**: accusative with infinitive; the subject of **esse** is the substantive phrase **totius . . . potiri**; the adjective agreeing with it must be neuter (§ 6, 1.).

15. **bellandi cupidi**: an instance of Cæsar's habit of noting the characteristic qualities of the populations he dealt with, especially their fighting qualities.

16 (p. 51). **pro**: *in proportion to; considering.*

18. **angustos**: *too narrow.*

CHAP. III. 1. **auctoritate**: *influence* of rank or position; **gratia** is the influence derived from personal qualities.

3. **jumentorum**: pack-horses or mules, because *helpful* (**juvo**); or else from **jugum**, *yoke*.

carrorum: these were probably four-wheeled carts or wagons. Gaul was tolerably well provided with cart-roads.

9. **lege**: a popular vote, carrying the authority of law, — after the manner of the free barbarian tribes.

11. **persuadet**: *prevails on* by urging; **suadeo** is, simply, *urge*.

13. **pop. Rom. amicus**: this was a distinction eagerly sought among the petty powers, so often at war with one another. The Sequani were at this time greatly oppressed by the German tribe of Suevi, against whom they afterwards solicited the aid of Cæsar.

16. **Divitiaci**: this chief was of the order of Druids; he had been in Rome, where he made the acquaintance of Cicero and other eminent Romans. He was thoroughly impressed with the power and superiority of the Romans, and was a faithful friend and ally of Cæsar. The name is by some thought to be a Druid title. The party of Druids, represented by Divitiacus and Liscus (Chap. XVI.) was the popular party, strong especially in the

large towns: it was opposed by the old clan-feeling kept up by military or feudal chiefs (*principes*) such as Orgetorix and Dumnorix. "Thus, two factions shared all the Gallic states: that of inheritance, or of the chiefs of clans; and that of election, or of the Druids and chiefs for life of the people of the towns. At the head of the first faction were the Ædui; and at the head of the second, the Arverni and the Sequani. Thus began, even at that period, the eternal war between Burgundy and Franche-Comté" (Michelet, *Hist. de France*, B. I, Ch. 2). The Druids were a religious or priestly order, jealous of the aristocracy of the tribe or clan, which represented what might be called the patriotic or native-Celtic party.

25 (p. 52). *tres*: the three were, the Helvetii, Ædui and Sequani.

CHAP. IV. 2. *ex vinculis*: see Lesson IV. Note 6.

3. *damnatum* follows *sequi*; *poenam* *seq.* is subject of *oportebat* (§ 39, 1): *it must needs be, that the penalty should overtake him, if condemned, of being burned alive (cremaretur)*.

4. *causae limits dictionis*, which limits *die*.

5. *familiam, clansmen; clientes, feudal retainers; obagratos*, those bound by money-obligation to personal service.

CHAP. V. 5. *vicos*: *villages*; that is, ranges of houses along a single street. In a city, *vici* is a *street*, considered as the houses occupied; *via* is the travelled way between them.

7. *comburent*: they burn their dwellings, partly to cut off hope of return; but also, to prevent their being occupied by their enemies the Germans.

9 (p. 53). *molita cibaria*: a three months' supply of meal, for immediate use; the unground corn being destroyed.

10. *Rauracis*, etc.: German tribes, in *Baden*, just north of the Rhine.

13. *Boios*: from whom the name *Bohemia* is thought to be derived; some of these lived in Gaul; others had gone eastward of the Tyrol into Noricum (*Styria* and *Carinthia*) for conquest.

CHAP. VI. 1. *omnino*: *in all*; here equivalent to *only*.

2. *Sequanos*: they lived north of the Rhone where it flows westward from the Jura, giving their name to the country of the upper Seine, now *Franche Comté*.

3. *inter*, etc.: the pass now guarded by the fort *l'Ecluse*.

8. *nuper*: that is, during Cicero's consulship, B.C. 63, five years before this time.

pacati: reduced to peace; subdued.

9. *Rhodanus*: the Rhone flows from the lake of Geneva westward about eighteen miles, before passing through the gorge of the Jura range. (See Note Chap. VIII. line 5.)

vado: ford, i.e., to be crossed by wading (*vadendo*).

11. *Geneva*: the oldest copies have *Genua* (*Genva*) or *Genava*; the modern spelling is here given, to distinguish it from *Genoa*, of which the Roman name is also *Genua*.

16. *diem* . . . *qua die*; feminine, as being the *terminus forensis*, or set time (§ 13, end); in the next line, *dies* is masculine.

18. *a. d. v.*: i.e., *ante diem quintum*; for the calculation of the date (March 28 of the Roman year), see § 83. It corresponded with our March 24 (according to the calculations of Leverrier made for the imperial History of Cæsar); that is, just after the time of the spring equinox. See § 56, i., 4.

Aprilis: accusative plural.

L. Pisone, etc.: the year was B.C. 58,

CHAP. VII. 3. *urbe*: this word, unless some other place is indicated, always means Rome — THE CITY.

maximis . . . *itineribus*: travelling, say his biographers, a hundred miles in a day.

5. *provinciae*: the dative, as indirect object after *imperat*.

6. *imperat*: the official term to denote a government levy.

12. *aliud* . . . *nullum*: like the English idiom, *other passage had they none*.

ut . . . *liceat*; a substantive clause, object of *rogare*, which regularly takes the accusative.

14. *L. Cassium*: this defeat was in the year B.C. 107.

21. *diem*: here, simply time in general.

22. *idus Aprilis*: both in the accusative plural.

CHAP. VIII. 1. *legione*, *militibus*: here the ablative of instrument.

2. *a lacu* . . . *Juram*: see Chap. VI. 9; the distance is almost exactly eighteen and a half Roman miles, following the bends of

the river. Cæsar knows nothing of the upper Rhone, above the lake of Geneva; but considers the lake to be its source.

5. **murum**: this rampart, or earthwork, was on the south side of the river, leaving the passage undisputed along the northern bank. The banks are generally rugged and steep, with sharp ravines; there are only four short reaches, in this course of eighteen miles, — a little over three miles in all, — requiring defences; and only two places where the river is fordable. Some remains of Cæsar's works can still be traced, according to the French engineers who lately surveyed the ground (see map).

7 (p. 55). **castella**: bastions, or redoubts.

9. **ea dies**: see note on Chap. vi. line 16.

10. **negat se . . . posse** = **ait se non posse**, *says he cannot*, — a very common use of the negative in Latin.

13. **dejecti**: *down-cast*; **de** in composition generally has the force of *down*.

CHAP. IX. 1. **relinquebatur**: the imperfect is used as the tense not of narrative, but of description (§ 27, II.).

2. **Sequanis invitis**: *if the Sequani should refuse*.

3. **sua sponte**: *by themselves*.

4. **deprecatore** may be considered as the ablative of instrument.

5. **gratia**: see note on Chap. III. line 1.

6. **plurimum poterat**: *had most power*.

largitione: not simply bribery; but rather, lavish gifts and hospitalities.

8. **duxerat**: this word is used of the man who marries a wife, i.e., he *leads* her to his own house; of the woman, it is said **nubit viro** (dat.), she *wears the veil* for him.

10. **obstrictas**: *close bound*; observe the force of the preposition.

CHAP. X. 2. **per agrum . . . facere**: a substantive phrase, subject of **esse** in the preceding line. The proposed migration was through the centre of Gaul to the shores of the Bay of Biscay, north of the *Garonne*.

3. **Tolosatum**: the people of the modern *Toulouse*.

9. **Labienum**: he was Cæsar's best and most trusted officer; when the civil war broke out between the parties of Cæsar and Pompey, he attached himself to the latter.

10. **magnis itineribus**: the ordinary day's march of a Roman army was about fifteen miles; a **magnum iter**, or forced march, was from twenty to twenty-five miles. Each soldier carried, besides his personal baggage and trenching-tools (**sarcina**), five wooden palisades for fortifying the camp,—in all, a weight often of 50 or 60 pounds.

11. **Aquileiam**: an important town at the head of the Adriatic, near the present *Trieste*. The troops were quartered not in the town, but near it.

12. **proximum iter**: probably over the most direct course between Turin to Grenoble.

20. **exercitum**: his army by this time amounted to near 25,000 men; the Helvetians had between 80,000 and 100,000 warriors to oppose him. *Merivale*.

CHAP. XI. 2. **Aeduum fines**: on both sides the *Arar* (*Saone*).

8. Supply **dicentes**.

10. **Aedui Ambarri**: these were probably a petty clan (*Ambarri*), sharing the allegiance and kindred (**necessarii et consanguinei**) of the powerful *Aedui*. Some editors alter the phrase by omitting *Aedui*, or by putting **quo** before and **quoque** after: *at the same time [with the Aedui] the Ambarri [also]*.

11. **depopulatis**: a deponent verb, especially in the perfect participle, is often used in a passive sense. (See Lesson XXXVIII.)

CHAP. XII. 1. **Arar**: the *Saone*, which joins the Rhone at the city of Lugdunum (*Lyons*), about seventy miles south-west of Lake Geneva. Here the course of the Rhone suddenly changes from west to south.

3. **lenitate**: not so much slowness as smoothness, contrasted not only with the Rhone, but with the swiftness and turbidness of the rivers in Italy.

4. **lintribus** (the nominative of this word seems to be a masculine form, and is used with masculine adjectives; it has a feminine nominative **lintris**, and is feminine in the other cases, § 11, 1.): these were canoes made of hollowed logs; when fastened together, they made a substantial pontoon-bridge, or may have been joined two and two, with a broad deck covering them. The **rates** were probably rafts of logs.

8. *de*: this word has the force here of *immediately upon, in the first moments of*; thus, *de tertia vigilia* is *just at midnight*, the night, longer or shorter, being divided into four equal watches.

13. *pagus*: the inhabitants of the district or canton; *Tiguri-nus*, near the modern *Zurich*.

14. *omnis civitas*, *the entire state*.

16. *L. Cassium*: see Chap. VII. 14.

jugum: this yoke was made by planting two spears in the ground and fastening a third across, making a rude frame, or gallows, under which the beaten army marched in token of *subjugation*. This was the lowest degree of military disgrace.

20. *calamitatem*: in its original sense, this word means, probably, a hail-storm, or such a tempest as to break down the *stalks* (*calamos*) of the cornfields.

21. *poenas*: the word means not punishment *inflicted*, but penalty *paid* (*persolvit, paid thoroughly*); *sumo* [*take*] *poenam* means, *I inflict the penalty*.

22. *ultus est*: *ulciscor* means both *avenge* and *punish*.

In 1862, numerous remains were discovered buried in two trenches, probably of those slain in this battle, — “pell-mell, skeletons of men, women, and children.” — *History of Julius Cæsar*.

CHAP. XIII. 2. *consequi*: the force of the preposition gives this word the meaning of *overtake* or *attain*.

in: not simply *over*, but *upon*, — i.e., a floating bridge.

5. *ut . . . transirent*: substantive phrase, in apposition with *id* (line 4).

legatos: this is the passive participle of *lego* (*depute*) used as a noun; hence it means, diplomatically, an *envoy* or *ambassador*; in military affairs, an officer delegated to special service, or *lieutenant*.

legationis: a collective noun, answering (by Synesis) to *legatos*.

Divico: now an old man, since the battle in which he was leader took place fifty-seven years before.

17. *magnopere* (sometimes written *magno opere*): here used almost as a noun, *let him not ascribe overmuch* [efficiency or importance] *to his own valor*.

18. **despiceret**: observe the force of the preposition, — *look down on*.

20. **insidiis** (p. 59): ablative of cause, — *confide by reason of* (or *rely on*) *stratagem*.

CHAP. XIV. 1. **eo**: *by this, or for this reason*; ablative of instrument, referring to the substantive phrase **quod . . . teneret**.

2. **dari**: the infinitive, in the oratio obliqua dependent on **respondit**; the subject of **dari** is **minus**, which is limited by **ambitiosis**.

3. **eo**: *by so much*; ablative of degree of difference (§ 54, v. end).

4. **ferre**: the subject of this infinitive is **se** understood (§ 67, i. end); its object is **eas res**.

quo: see note on **eo**, preceding line.

6. **eo**: see note on line 1; it refers to the phrase **quod . . . putaret**.

7. **commissum (esse)**: the subject is **quidquam** (*any thing*) understood, equivalent to **ullam rem**, as the antecedent of the relative **quare**.

8. **timendum**: accusative of gerund (or gerundive used impersonally) as subject of **esse** understood; *that there should be reason to fear*.

quod: the Synecdochical or Greek accusative (§ 52, iv.), *as to which*; with **si**, it is usually rendered *but if*.

9. **vellet**: i.e., *if Cæsar were willing to overlook, &c.* (which he was not, § 59, iv. 2).

10. **quod . . . vexassent**: a substantive clause in apposition with **injuriarum**, which limits **memoriam**.

15. **pertinere**: the subject of this is **quod . . . admirarentur**.

17. **quos**: the antecedent is **his** in the following line.

18. **secundiores**: the word **secundus**, *favorable*, is derived from **sequor**, *follow*, meaning that an event follows one's desire or purpose.

21. **facturos**: understand **Helvetios**.

Aeduis: dative of advantage depending on **satisfaciunt**.

ipsis: dative governed by the compound **intulerint** (§ 51, v.).

23. **satisfaciunt**: *pay damages*.

CHAP. XV. 4. **coactum habebat**: literally *had collected*, like the English perfect active; a form in which modern languages have followed this Latin usage. More strictly rendered, it should be, *held* (had in hand) *when he had collected it*.

6. **cupidius**: *too eagerly*.

alieno: i.e., a place better *for the other party*, and so *unfavorable* to them.

7. **cum**: used after verbs of fighting, &c. (see Lesson VII. note 4).

9. **equitibus**: ablative of instrument.

13. **habebat**: the object is the clause **hostem . . . prohibere**.

14. **ita**: refers to **uti**; *in such a way that*.

17. **quinis, senis**: distributives, implying that this was the *constant* distance kept between the two armies. The country here is very irregular and broken (see map); so that it was impossible for Cæsar to get any advantage by a rapid march, or by an attack on the Helvetian rear.

CHAP. XVI. 1. **Aeduos frumentum**: double accusative after **flagitare** (§ 52, III.).

2. **polliciti**: this verb signifies to promise freely; see Part Third, III. 17.

flagitare: historical infinitive.

3. **frigora**: a cold season, or spells of cold weather (plural), *not the cold* in general.

5. **pabuli**: *green fodder*. 6. **frumento** is governed by **uti**.

7. **propterea . . . quod**: *for this reason, because*.

minus: often, as here, equivalent to a negative; *he could not use*, governing the ablative **frumento**.

9 (p. 52). **discedere**: the force of **dis-** is *apart*.

ducere, dicere: historical infinitive.

10. The subject of **conferri**, etc., is **frumentum**; translate actively, "the corn *was getting together, was coming in, was close by*."

12. **frumentum** is the accusative, object of **metiri**, and depends on **oporteret**.

15. **Vergobretum**: the elective chief magistrate, as distinct from the chief (**princeps**) of the clan. It was an executive office, the title being Celtic, *guerg breth*, "executer of judgment" (Mommsen).

19. **necessario**: *at such a pressing season*.

CHAP. XVII. 4. *privatim*: some read *privati*; it means, in *their private capacity*.

5. *hos*: the subject of *deterre* in the next line.

6-9. *ne frumentum conferant . . . imperia praeferre*: this sentence gives a good example of what is called a Various Reading. It must be remembered that these Commentaries were first written down as rough notes, or memoranda, and were copied a great many times by hand before their form was fixed by printing. The sentence as it stands is that given in the best editions; some of which, however, have *perferre*, *bear*, for *praeferre*, *prefer*. Translate *from bringing the corn which they were bound to furnish* (*praestare*); representing that *if now they could not hold the chief rank in Gaul, they would rather bear the sway of Gauls than of Romans* (*quam, than*, after the comparative implied in *praeferre*). This is clear, but awkward and hard. To remedy it, the neatest and best conjecture is, to put the pause after *conferant*, read *debeat* (line 7) for the plural *debeant*, and *perferre* for *praeferre*; then translate (beginning at *quod*), *since it must be better* (*praestare* having here the neuter meaning *excel*) *to bear the sway of the Gauls, &c.*; but there is no manuscript authority to justify the singular *debeat*. Some would read *dicant* for *debeant*; but this is mere conjecture. Others, again, put *satius esse*, *that it is better*, after *perferre*; but this is only an explanatory note, written by some early editor.

15 (p. 63). *id*: in apposition with *quod . . . enuntiarit*.

CHAP. XVIII. 3. *jaotari*: a frequentative, from *jacio*, meaning, *tossed from hand to hand*; here, *made matter of discussion, or common talk*.

7. *Dumnorigem* is the subject of all the infinitives which follow, down to *desperare*, line 29 (p. 64).

10. *portoria*: tolls on the carrying trade (*porto, carry*) or transit of merchandise.

11. *redempta habere*: *had bought up* (see note on Chap. xv. line 4). *redempta* agrees with *portoria* and *vectigalia*.

17. *largiter posse*: *had extensive power*; see note to Chap. III. line 22.

potentiae: this is power considered as an attribute of the person; power to do any thing is expressed by *potestas*; opportunity by *facultas*; *imperium* is military authority.

20. **ex matre**: *on the mother's side*; i.e., his half-sister.

nuptum: *in marriage*; supine of **nubo** (see note to Chap. IX. line 8), after the verb of motion **collocasse**.

22. **Helvetiis**: dative (com. et incom.) after **cupere**, which for its direct object takes an accusative; render, *was ambitious for the Helvetians*.

suo nomine: *on his own account*.

24. **eius** refers to **Dumnorix**.

27 (p. 64). **imperio**: *under the military rule*; the phrase is equivalent to the Ablative Absolute **Romanis imperantibus**.

31. **initium . . . factum**: understand **esse**; **eius fugae** is in apposition with the phrase **quod . . . factum**; **ante** is here an adverb (§ 55, 1.); **quod** is relative: *as to the battle, which &c.*

CHAP. XIX. 2. **accederent**: *were added*; **res** is in apposition with the clause **quod . . . accusaretur**.

8. **obsides . . . curasset**: *had taken care that hostages should be given* (§ 25, 1., end).

5. **injussu suo et civitatis**: *without his (Cæsar's) authority, or that of the state*. 9. **unum** agrees with **quod . . . cognoverat**.

11. **egregiam**: the meaning of this word is, *above the common level* (e grege, *out of the herd*); hence, *distinguished, excellent*.

13. **supplicio**: *punishment or execution*; this word is derived from the adjective **supplex** (*under-bent*), signifying *on the bended knee*; i.e., either as a *suppliant* for mercy, or, as here, to receive the blow of the executioner.

17. **cui**: indirect object after **habebat**; translate, *in whom*.

19. **commonefacit**: *warns or notifies*; observe the radical **mōne**, *warn*.

22 (p. 65). **eius** refers to **Divitiacus**.

23. **causa**: *a case before a tribunal for judgment*; *after investigation of the case*.

CHAP. XX. 2. **complexus**: this word means *clasp* in the arms; distinguished from **amplector**, *grasp*.

3. **scire . . . vera**: (saying that) *he knew those things were true*.

4. **ex eo**: *from this fact*.

5-7. **ipse** and **se** refer to **Divitiacus**; **ille** to **Dumnorix**.

10. **fraterno**: the adjective here used for the objective genitive (§§ 47, v.; 50, III. 1); *love towards his brother*.

11. a *Caesare*: after *accidisset* as if it were a passive verb; *if any thing should be done to him by Caesar*; corresponding to *factum* (for *id factum esse*) two lines below.

12. *apud eum*: i.e., with *Caesar*.

18. *rei publicae*: objective genitive, with *injuriam*, *wrong done to the state*.

24. *Dumnorigi*: indirect object after *ponit* (for *appontit*); *he puts guards near or about Dumnorig*.

CHAP. XXI. 5. *facilem*: i.e., *ascensum*.

de: see note to Chap. XII. line 8.

6. *pro praetore*: that is, in independent command of a detached force; a *legatus* with praetorian authority.

7. *ducibus*: the predicate (by Ablative Absolute) in apposition with *his*; *having as guides men who knew the way*.

8. *consilii*: limiting *quid*; it signifies not *his plan* as a whole, but *what belongs to his plan*.

13. *L. Sullae*: this was the famous dictator, who carried on the civil war with Marius, and ruled Rome as a despot, twenty-five years before this time, B.C. 83.

Crassi: understand *exercitu*. *M. Licinius Crassus* (see Introduction) had suppressed the revolt of the gladiators under Spartacus, B.C. 71. He perished in a campaign against the Parthians, B.C. 53.

CHAP. XXII. 1, 14. *prima luce, multo die*: *at early dawn; in broad day*.

8. *insignibus*: *marks of distinction*; these were either the style of armor and equipment, or badges, such as stags' horns, eagles' plumes, &c., worn by the Gauls.

13. *expectabat*: imperfect; *continued to look out*.

15. *et . . . et*: see § 43, 8.

17. *quod, what*, for *id quod*; *id* being the object of *renuntiasso*.

18 (p. 67). *quo*: the antecedent is *intervallo*, understood; *at the usual distance*; *intervallo* is, properly, the distance from one entrenchment (*vallum*) to the other.

CHAP. XXIII. 7. *fugitivos*, the term which generally means fugitive slaves is here applied, contemptuously, to deserters from the cavalry of the Gallic allies.

decurionis: this word means, properly, a commander of ten men; three of these sub-officers were formerly attached to each *turma* or squadron of cavalry, consisting of thirty-two; afterwards, a single *decurio* commanded the whole squadron.

13. **itinere converso**: the Helvetians were now a good distance in advance of Cæsar, and might probably have continued their march unmolested to the sea; this change in their design, with the hope of destroying their Roman foe, was the fatal step which led to their utter overthrow.

Cæsar's army at this time was not far from 60,000 men, including about 20,000 auxiliaries, mostly "Gaulish mountaineers;" so that he was a full match, in a fair field, for the Helvetians, who had now about 70,000 fighting men. — *History of Julius Cæsar*.

CHAP. XXIV. 1. **animum advertit**: usually written as one word, **animadvertit**; to *turn the thought* upon any thing is to *notice* it; hence it takes a direct object, like a single transitive verb.

8. **sarcinas**: see note to Chap. x. line 10.

9. **eum**: i.e., **locum**.

12. **confertissima**: not simply *in close array*, but *crowded*, or *in solid mass*.

13 (p. 68). **phalange facta**: that is, so as to lock and overlap their shields into a close fence (see next chapter).

CHAP. XXV. 1. **suo**: understand *equo*; as we say, *having set back his own and the others' horses*. This was, probably, because he distrusted the good faith of his cavalry, which consisted principally of Gauls. He is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again, when the enemy run."

4. **pilis**: these consisted of a stout staff, with a long, sharp, slender head, projecting about nine inches, making a weapon about six feet long, which could be thrown with considerable force about a hundred feet.

5. **ea disjecta**: when the phalanx was broken apart.

6. **Gallis . . . impedimento**: see § 51, vii.

7. **pluribus**: *several*.

8. **scutis**: these were oblong shields of plank, five feet in length, designed to protect the whole body; they were pierced and pinned together at the edges, where several overlapped.

9. **evellere** depends on **poterant**; its object is **id** (*ferrum*) understood.

11. **multi ut**: *many*, to such a degree *that*, &c.

14. **mille**: accusative of distance; it is here used not as an adjective, but as a collective noun, limited by **passuum**.

15. **succedentibus**: *coming up close below*.

18. **ex itinere**: *on the march*; that is, as they came up.

21. **conversa signa**: see § 72, I.; translate, *the Romans turned their standards (faced about), and advanced in two divisions*. The two divisions stood not back to back, but at right angles facing outward; one to press in front, the other to repel the flank attack (**latere aperto**, line 18) of the Boii and Tulingi.

CHAP. XXVI. 1. **ancipiti**: the word means *with two heads*; here it refers to the Roman force striking in two directions at once.

3. **alteri . . . alteri**: the two divisions of the enemy (§ 22, 2).

6 (p. 69). **aversum**: *turned away*; that is, no one saw their backs.

9. **pro**: i.e., to serve as an entrenchment.

11. **mataras, tragulas**, long pikes for thrusting.

21. **Lingonas**: the Greek form of the accusative, common in these names of tribes; the Lingones occupied the district towards the north.

CHAP. XXVII. 8. **conquiruntur**: for the use of the present passive, see §§ 27, I.; 57, II.; also Lesson XXXVIII.; translate (actively), *while they are hunting them up and bringing them together*.

CHAP. XXVIII. 1. **quorum**: the antecedent is **his** (dative) which is governed by **imperavit** (§ 68, III.).

3. **reductos**: *when they had been brought back* (§ 72, I.).

in hostium numero: that is, they were massacred to a man; the phrase is regularly used in this signification.

5. **perfugis**: these are not simply *runaways* (**fugitivi**, Chap. xxxiii. line 7), but *deserters*, who join the enemy's force.

7. **fructibus**: generally, the fruits of trees: here, like **frugibus** (which is found in some copies), it means, in general, grain and other field-produce.

9. **copiam facerent**: *should furnish a supply*.

11. **ea ratione**: *by this reasoning, or on this consideration; not for this reason*, which would be **ea de causa**.

16. *Aeduis*: dative after *concessit*.

Boios is the object of *collocarent*.

egregia . . . cogniti: *they were known to be of eminent valor*.

17. *ut . . . collocarent*: this clause is the object of *concessit*.

19. *parem . . . atque*: *equal . . . to what* (§§ 21, III.; 43, 9).

CHAP. XXIX. 2. *litteris Graecis*: that is, probably, in Greek characters, — as in cipher, for concealment, as is often held; or, rather, because the Gauls had no alphabet of their own; — not in the Greek language.

EXERCISES TO BE TRANSLATED INTO LATIN.

These sentences are prepared for each chapter, in illustration of the rules of Syntax referred to in the chapter. With this view, in order not to distract the mind of the pupil from the special point in consideration, they are made very brief and simple, in general containing no more words than are absolutely required for this purpose. No exercises upon the use of moods and tenses are given, as these will come in better at a later stage; nor was it thought worth while to give any for the few rules that are introduced after Chapter VIII.

CHAPTER I. 1. We shall go into the province. 2. The war had been waged in your province. 3. Our soldiers will take the camp which has been fortified. 4. The consul is Piso, whose legions are on the march into Gaul. 5. This mountain is called Jura. 6. The Germans excelled in multitude of men. 7. This man is a German, that one a Gaul. 8. On account of these things he was made consul. 9. Four hundred of the soldiers were Belgians. 10. The Alps are the highest of all these mountains. 11. We are not unfriendly to you. 12. The town was in the middle of the province. 13. The river Rhine is in the farthest part of Gaul. 14. We are on the top of the mountain. 15. Drive the enemy from your territories. 16. For the purpose of (ad) making war. 17. While (inter) doing (gero) these things. 18. On account of assaulting the town. 19. We think that you are friendly. 20. It has been said that the Gauls inhabit these fields.

CHAP. II. 1. You are too desirous (17, v. 1) of glory. 2. They are friends of (i.e., to) Cæsar. 3. They were enemies of the gods. 4. After the battle had been fought (Abl. Abs.) he marched with his army across the Rhine. 5. We shall adopt (utor) these plans. 6. He had got possession of our camp. 7. Cæsar commanded the Belgians (to give) hostages (omit to give). 8. You are desirous of obtaining power. 9. He was desirous of obtaining power.

CHAP. III. 1. I was in Gaul on that day. 2. I was in Gaul two days. 3. We had given them many things. 4. He had hastened to cross the river. 5. The Gauls wished to be helped by the Germans. 6. He will leave for me the boats and rafts. 7. This is very easy to say (latter sup.). 8. Cæsar marched seven days. 9. On the eighth day he burned the bridge. 10. We will prevent (prohibeo) the return of the enemy.

CHAP. IV. 1. By means of the Æduans we rule (impéro). 2. On account of the Æduans we cannot collect our men. 3. On account of these things, they persevered. 4. He has persuaded them through their friends.

CHAP. V. 1. This river is (by) much broader. 2. That road is ten miles longer. 3. When they had gone forth out of the city, they returned home (plur.). 4. On that day I came from Tusculum to Rome. 5. We were about to seize the pass. 6. Who ordered you to do this? 7. We are prepared for your return.

CHAP. VI. 1. He came on the eighth day before the Kalends of April. 2. Piso is a man of great influence. 3. The Belgians were of the greatest (summus) bravery. 4. These are the boats with which we crossed the river.

CHAP. VII. 1. The Helvetians have broad fields. 2. Cæsar had a large army. 3. This river has not many fords.

CHAP. VIII. 1. The Rhine flows many miles. 2. There is a wall eighteen feet high between us. 3. Our territories extend three hundred miles in that direction (pars).

PART THIRD.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS.

LEARN carefully the Rules of Quantity (§ 78, omitting at first the smaller type, and the rules for terminations on pages 110, 111) and of Scanning (§ 80); also the Forms of Hexameter and Pentameter verse (§ 82, I, II.). The information given in §§ 77, 79, or so much of it as is required for these Exercises, should be explained and illustrated by the teacher; and the examples which follow should be analyzed (as in the first instance here given) until these two forms of verse are perfectly familiar.

The Hexameter may be explained, if the teacher prefer, as consisting of six Dactyls, of which the last is always shortened of the final syllable; and either of the others — the fifth rarely — may be exchanged for a Spondee. So analyzed, it is regarded as a Catalectic verse (§ 80), that is, “stopped.”

I. EXAMPLES IN SCANNING.

(From Siebells' *Tirocinium Poeticum*.)

1. *Hexameter*.

1. Caelum, non animum, mutant, qui trans mare currunt.

The first foot, *caelum*, is a spondee; *ae* is a diphthong (§ 78, I. 2), *u* is long by position, before *mn* (§ 78, I. 4); — *nōn ānī-* is a dactyl: *non* is long (§ 78, II. 4, Exc.); and the two syllables *ānī* are both short by Authority (§ 77, end); — *-mum mū-* is a spondee; also *-tant quī* (§ 78, II. 7); *trans mārē*, a dactyl; *currunt*, a spondee.

Caēlūm | nōn ānī|mūm mū|tānt quī | trāns mārē | cūrrūnt.

qui has for its antecedent *fi* understood, the subject of *mutant*.

2. Multi rixantur de lana saepe caprina.

lana caprina, *goats' wool*; i.e., something utterly worthless.

3. *Conscia mens recti fama mendacia ridet.*

Recti is the objective genitive after **conscia** (§ 50, III. 2); **fama** limits **mendacia**, which is governed by **ridet** (§ 52, I., foot of p. 66).

4. *Omnia deficiant, animus tamen omnia vincit.*

Deficiant is subjunctive in a supposed case, — “*even though*,” etc. (§ 60, 4).

5. *Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.*

ut = although (§ 61, 2).

6. *Gaudia principium nostri sunt saepe doloris.*

principium is in the predicate in apposition with the subject **gaudia**; **nostri** agrees with **doloris**, which limits **principium**.

7. *Sperne voluptates — nocet empti dolore voluptas.*8. *Incidit in Scyllam, qui vult vitare Charybdim.*

At the entrance to the Straits of Messina was a rock on the Italian shore called Scylla, and opposite to it a whirlpool named Charybdis; the navigation between these was difficult. At the present day, Scylla still stands, a massive cliff; but Charybdis seems to have changed, as the whirlpool is no longer formidable.

9. *Dum vitant stulti vitia, in contraria currunt.*

vitia in is an example of Synalœpha, or Elision, § 80: the final **a** is dropped before the initial **i**; the two feet are, therefore, |tī vītr̄| in con-|.

10. *Dimidium facti, qui coepit, habet; sapere aude.*

habet governs **dimidium**.

11. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.*

The **um** in **argentum** is cut off by Ecthipsis (§ 80); so that the two feet are |argent|' est au-|.

auro is ablative after **vilius** (§ 54, v.).

12. *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.*

orandum est is used impersonally, having for its subject the substantive clause which follows; render “*we should pray*.”

13. Tempora mutantur, et nos mutamur in illis.

The final syllable in *mutantur* is properly short (§ 78, II. 4), but is here long by Caesura, as it is called; that is, by the rhetorical pause at the end of the phrase, occurring after the accented syllable (*Arsis*) of the third foot (§ 79, p. 118; § 80, end).

14. Ira furor brevis est; animum rege, qui nisi paret
Imperat: hunc frenis, hunc tu compesce catenis.15. Rusticus exspectat dum defluat amnis; at ille
Labitur et labetur in omne volubilis aevum.

defluat (§ 62, II.); *ille*, i.e., *amnis*; *volubilis* is predicate nominative, agreeing with *ille*.

16. Pauper erat Curius, reges cum vinceret armis;
Pauper Fabricius, Pyrrhi cum sperneret aurum.

Curius and *Fabricius* were two of the greatest and most upright men whom Rome produced; they flourished at the time of the war with Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, B.C. 275.

The final syllable of *pauper* is short (§ 78, II. 4), but is long by position in the second line.

17. Forte per angustam tenuis vulpecula rimam,
Repserat in cumeram frumenti, pastaque rursus
Ire foras pleno tendebat corpore frustra.
Cui mustela procul: "Si vis" ait "effugere istinc,
Macra cavum repetes artum, quem macra
subisti?"

cavum = *rimam*. *subisti* = *subi(v)isti*.

18. Est procul in pelago saxum spumantia contra
Litora, quod tumidis submersum tunditur olim
Fluctibus, hiberni condunt ubi sidera cori:
Tranquillo silet, immotaque attollitur unda
Campus et apricis statio gratissima mergis.

ÆNEID. V. 124-128.

tranquillo, understand *tempore*, — in quiet weather.

2. *Elegiacs.*

1. Ardua res vicisse alios, victoria major
Est animi fluctus composuisse suos.
suos, i.e., one's own.
2. Poma dat autumnus, formosa est messibus aestas,
Ver praebet flores, igne levatur hiems.
3. Navita de ventis, de tauris narrat arator,
Enumerat miles vulnera, pastor oves.
4. Nec magnus census nec clarum nomen avorum,
Sed probitas magnos ingeniumque facit.
magnos, predicate, after viros understood.
5. Rebus in angustis facile est contemnere vitam :
Fortiter ille facit, qui miser esse potest.
res angustae = poverty.
6. Principiis obsta ! sero medicina paratur,
Cum mala per longas convaluere moras.
7. Gutta cavat lapidem ; consumitur anulus usu,
Et teritur pressa vomer aduncus humo.
8. Cernis ut ignavum corrumpant otia corpus,
Ut capiant vitium, ni moveantur, aquae.
9. Venturae memores jam nunc estote senectae,
Sic nullum vobis tempus abibit iners.
Nec, quae praeteriit, iterum revocabitur unda,
Nec, quae praeteriit, hora redire potest.
Utendum est aetate, cito pede labitur aetas,
Nec bona tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit.

vobis, for you.

The last syllable of *praeteriit* is long by Cæsura.

utendum est, we must use, governing the ablative.

tam and *quam* qualify *bona*, i.e., *aetas*, so good as.

II. DISTINCTION OF WORDS IN MEMORIAL VERSES.

(From Donaldson's Complete Latin Grammar.)

1. *Differences of Quantity.*

1. Sternitur arbor *acer*, fueris si viribus *acer*.
2. Dum sinet hora *canes*; effoeto corpore *canes*;
Grandaevique *canis* candescunt tergora *canis*.
3. Silva vetus *cecidit*, ferro quam nemo *cecidit*.
4. Fert ancilla *colum*; penetrat res humida *colum*.
5. Si vis esse *comes* mihi, mores indue *comes*.
6. Lucrandi *cupido* damno est sua saepe *cupido*.
7. Oblitus *decoris*, violat praecepta *decoris*.
8. *Dedere* cor divis par est, qui tanta *dedere*.
9. Carmina *dicantur*, Domino dum templa *dicantur*.
10. Solvere *diffidit*, nodum qui *diffidit* ense.
11. Sanus *edit* carnem; carmen doctissimus *edit*.
12. *Educat* hic catulos, ut eos *educat* in apros.
13. Si tibi non est aes, *es* inops, et pingua non *es*.
14. *Fabula* sermonis; *fabula* est faba parvula dicta.
15. Fallit saepe *fretum* placido nimis aequore *fretum*.
16. *Fugere* hi; *fugere* est melius, ne fuste *fugere*.
17. Per quod quis peccat, per *idem* mox plectitur *idem*.
18. Difficilis *labor* est, cujus sub pondere *labor*.

19. *Levis* adhuc puer est; *levis* autem lingua puellae.

20. Ut *lepores* canibus, sunt omnia capta *lepore*.

21. Cernit triste *malum* — fractum jam turbine *malum*:

Mala mali malo meruit *mala* maxima mundo:

Malo ego *mala* mea bona quam *mala* frangere *mala*.

22. *Mane* domi, mi care, *mane*, visure sodales.

23. Es praeclarus homo, *miseris* si *miseris* aurum.

24. *Nitere*, parve puer, cupies quicumque *nitere*.

25. Sit *nota nota*; *notus* ventus, sed *notus* amicus.

26. *Oblita* quae fuco rubet, est *oblita* decoris.

27. *Occidit* latro; verum sol *occidit* almus.

28. *Operior* Fabium, qui longo *operitur* amictu.

Observe that the present *ōpērior* cannot be used in hexameter verse in the first person singular; or *ōpērior* (*oppērior*) in any other person of the present.

29. *Os* (oris) mandat; sed *os* (ossis) manditur ore.

30. Quaeque *palus* stagnat; fixus stat *palus* acutus.

31. Gaudet uterque *parens*, si filius est bene *parens*.

32. *Pendere* vult justus; sed non *pendere* malignus.

33. *Perfidus* absque fide est; contra est *perfidus* amicus.

34. Lude *pila*; *pilum* torquetur; *pila* columna est.

35. Pro reti et regione *plaga* est; pro verbere *plaga*.

36. Sunt cives urbis *populus*; est *populus* arbor.
37. Si vitare *potes*, ne plurima pocula *potes*.
38. Haud mihi *profecta* est bene res ex urbe *profecto*.
39. Quae probus ille *refert*, nostra cognoscere *refert*.
40. Decretum *relegat*, qui sontem ex urbe *relegat*.
41. Si qua *sede sedes*, atque est tibi commoda *sedes*,
Illa *sede sede*; nec *sede* ubi *sidera* lucent.
42. *Tribula* grana terunt; *tribuli* nascuntur in agris.
43. Ne sit *uti* censes; opus est melioribus *uti*.
44. Si transire *velis* maris undas, utere *velis*.
45. Merx nummis *venit*; *venit* huc, aliunde *profectus*.
46. *Venimus* hesternæ, ast hodierna luce *venimus*.
47. Nil prosunt *vires*, ni probitate *vires*.

2. Differences of Form and Meaning.

1. Cantat *acanthis* avis; sed floret *acanthus* in agris.
2. Qui fert *arma* humeris, *armo* dux fertur equino.
3. Haec *cassis* galea est; hi *casses* retia signant.
cassis (fem.) is a *helmet*; *casses* (masc.) means *nets*.
4. Cedo facit *cessi*; *cecidi*, cado; caedo, *cecidi*.
cedo (yield) makes *cessi*; *cădo* (fall), *căcidi*; *caedo* (cut), *căcidi*.
5. *Clava* ferit; *clavus* firmat; *clavisque* recludit.

6. *Consule* doctores, si tu tibi *consulis* ipsi.
7. *Frontem* dic capitis, *frondem* dic arboris esse.
8. Est *cutis* in carne, est detracta e corpore *pellis*.
cūtis is skin on the flesh; *pellis*, the hide taken off.
9. *Sanguis* inest venis; *cruor* est e corpore fusus.
sanguis is blood in the veins; *cruor* is blood (gore) shed from the body.
10. *Fructus* arboribus, *fruges* nascuntur in agris.
11. Ales *hirundo* canit; nat *hirudo*; vernat *arundo*.
12. *Alga* venit pelago; sed nascitur *ulva* palude.
13. Quod non est *simulo*; *dissimulo*que quod est.
14. Lingua cibum *gustat*, qui bene cumque *sapit*.
15. Sunt aetate *senes*; *veteres* vixere priores.
16. Ne sis *securus*, qui non es *tutus* ab hoste.
17. Ultro *polliceor*; *promitto* saepe rogatus.
18. Quid nisi mens *infensa*, *infestam* torqueat hastam?
19. Active *perdo*; passive *amittere* possum.
 That is, *perdo* signifies ruin as well as lose.
20. *Forfice* sartores; tonsores *forpice* gaudent;
 At faber ignitum *forcipe* prendit opus.
21. Qui sculpsit *caelat*; qui servat condita *celat*.
22. Merx *venit*; mercesque *venit*, quaesita labore.
23. Spondet *vas* (*vadis*), at *vas* (*vasis*) continet escam.

24. *Armus* brutorum est ; *humerus* ratione fruentum ;
Tergum est amborum ; bellua *tergus* habet.
25. *Ungula* conculcat ; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis*.
26. *Prora* prior, *puppis* pars ultima, at ima *carina*.
27. *Cominus* ense feris, jacta cadis *eminus* hasta.
28. Dividimus *muros*, et *moenia* pandimus urbis.
29. *Vallamus* proprie castrum, *sepimus* ovile.
30. *Consortes* fortuna eadem ; *socios* labor idem ;
 Sed caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa *sodales*.
31. Vir *comis* multos *comites* sibi jungit eundo ;
 Unum *collegas* efficit officium.
32. Hasta *teres* dici, sphaera *rotunda* potest.
33. Omnibus in *rebus* *remur* ratione sagaci ;
Rem petit unusquisque ; *reos* *res*-publica punit ;
Irrita ne facias, *rationem* ponere par est.

These words are variously derived from a common root ; *res* signifying *thing* or *property* ; *reor* (reflective), to set a *thing* before the mind (or *think*) ; *ratio*, the *act of thought* ; *reus*, one *charged* as to the *matter* in controversy (*res*) ; *irritus* (negative), made of *no effect*.

34. *Nosse* potes *populum*, sed *sci's* quid agatur in
 urbe ;
Sontibus *ignoscis* ; *notos* *agnoscis* *amicos* ;
 Et *cognoscis* eum qui non tibi *cognitus* esset.

scio (like *science*) implies *knowledge of the fact* ; *nosco*, *knowledge of the thing*. The root of the latter, *gno* (the same with the English *know*), is found in the original form, in *gnosco*, and in its compounds given above.

35. *Credulus exspectas; fidos praestolor* amicos.

That is, **exspecto** denotes indefinite hope or expectation; **praestolor** presumes an appointment which will be kept.

36. *Dulcia* delectant gustantem; *suavia* odore;

Jucunda exhilarant animum; sed *grata* probantur

A gratis; quae visa placent loca *amoena* vocamus.

Of things pleasant or sweet, the adjective **dulcis** refers especially to taste; **suavis**, to smell; **jucundus**, to what gives mental pleasure; **gratus**, to what is welcome or grateful, though it may give no immediate delight; and **amoenus**, to the gratification of sight.

37. *Planitiem* dicas regionis, et *aequora* campi;

Aequora pontus habet; ponto licet esse profundo;

Et *mare* proruptum *pelago* premit arva sonanti.

Here, **planities** is *absence of hills*; **aequor**, *level expanse*; **pontus** implies *depth*; **mare**, the *mass of water*; and **pelagus**, its *breadth of surface*, — here, the *roaring flood of waters*.

38. Sit *pietas* coluisse Deum, coluisse parentes;

Relligio populum obstringit formidine caeli.

39. Praesentes *timeo* casus, *metuoque* futuros;

Formidare licet fures, regesque *vereri*;

Attonitus *trepido*, tremulos *pavor* occupat artus.

Here, **metus** is a cautious and far-seeing fear; **timor**, terror at immediate dangers; **formido** applies more to terrors of the fancy, and **vereor** to the fixed habit of the mind; **paveo** and **trepido** refer especially to the physical effects of fear, — pallor and trembling.

40. Vir *bonus* est *frugi*; nequam *malus*; usque re-
clamat

Noxa *reo* culpae, quem *fraus* et *noxia* produnt.

Nil sibi vir justus, nisi verum orabit et aequum;

Sed vitium vetitumque *nefas* in *crimina* ducunt.

Peccatum opprobrio est; *facinus* memorabile
patrat

Qui *scelere* obstrictus fas juraque proterit;
at qui

Flagitium peperit turpatur nomine pravo.

Of the words here used to denote moral qualities, *bonus* means kind, or good-hearted; *frugi* (*fruor, enjoy*), *worthy* or *useful*; *nequam*, *worthless*; *reus* is one *arraigned* before the court, and *crimen* the *criminal charge*; *nefas* is *transgression* of divine law; *peccatum*, *sin*, or one's own fault; *scelus*, an act of atrocious guilt; *facinus*, a deed of violence; *flagitium* especially involves personal disgrace.

The Family Relations.

Agnati patris, *cognati* matris habentur.

Dic *patruos* patris fratres, *amitasque* sorores;

Frater *avunculus* est, soror est *matertera* matris.

Quos generant fratres natos, dices *patrueles*;

Sed *consobrinos* dic, quos peperere sorores.

Quos soror et frater gignunt, dices *amitinos*.

Vir natae *gener* est, *nurus* est pro conjuge nati.

Uxoris genitor *socer* est, *socrusque* genitrix.

Vitricus haud verus pater est, materque *noverca*.

Ipse viri frater *levir*, sed *fratria* fratris

Uxor; *glos* uxor fratris, soror atque mariti.

The Twelve Gods.

Vesta, Minerva, Ceres, Juno, Diana, Venus, Mars,
Mercurius, Jovi', Neptunus, Vulcanus, Apollo.

The Nine Muses.

Calliope, Urania, Euterpe, Polyhymnia, Clio,
Terpsichore, atque Erato, cum Melpomeneque
Thalia.

The Three Fates.

Net *Clotho*, *Lachesis* sortitur, et *Atropos* occat.

The Rivers of the World Below.

Styx, Acheron, Lethe, Phlegethon, Cocytus, Aver-
nus.

Styx, means *grief*; **Acheron**, *woful*; **Lethe**, *forgetfulness*;
Phlegethon, *fiery*; **Cocytus**, *lamentation*; **Avernus**, *birdless*.

The Seven Cities which claimed Homer.

Smyrna, Chios, Colophon, Salamis, Rhodus, Argos,
Athenae.

The Seven Kings of Rome.

Romulus ante omnes; post hunc Numa, Tullus, et
Ancus;
Tarquinius Priscus; dein Servius atque Superbus.

The Seven Hills of Rome.

Collis *Aventini*, dein celsa *Palatia* fulgent,
Transque Forum surgit *Capitoli* immobile saxum;
Caelius, *Esquilae*, dictusque a *Vimine* collis,
Ultimaque ad Campum tendunt juga longa *Quirini*.

The Winds.

Asper ab axe ruit *Boreas*, furit *Eurus* ab ortu ;
Auster amat medium solem, *Zephyrusque* cadentem ;

Flant *Subsolanus*, *Vulturnus* et *Eurus* ab ortu ;
Circius occasum, *Zephyrusque Favonius* adflant ;
E solis medio surgunt *Notus*, *Africus*, *Auster* ;
Conveniunt *Aquilo*, *Boreas*, et *Caurus* ab ursa.

The Signs of the Zodiac.

Sunt Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo,
Libraque, Scorpius, Arcitenens, Capre, Amphora,
Pisces.

The Seasons of the Year.

Ver, *Aestas*, *Auctumnus*, *Hiemps*, dominantur in
anno.

Aestas a Geminis, *Auctumnus* Virgine surgit ;
Bruma Sagittifero, *Ver* Piscibus incipit esse.

The Seven Liberal Arts.

Gram. loquitur ; *Dia.* vera docet ; *Rhet.* verba
colorat ;

Mus. canit ; *Ar.* numerat ; *G.* ponderat ; *As.* colit
astra.

The seven are, Grammar, Dialectics (Logic), Rhetoric, Music, Arithmetic, Geometry, Astronomy. Those in the first line are called the *Trivium* ; those in the second the *Quadrivium*.

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

DEFINITIONS, § 45.

1. A **SENTENCE** is a form of words which contains either a Statement, a Question, an Exclamation, or a Command.

A sentence which contains a Statement is called a **DECLARATORY SENTENCE**: as, *puer vēnit, the boy came.*

A sentence which contains a Question is called an **INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE**: as, *venitne puer? did the boy come?*

A sentence which contains an Exclamation is called an **EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE**: as, *quam celeriter venit! how fast he came!*

A sentence which contains a Command is called an **IMPERATIVE SENTENCE**: as, *vēni, puer, ad me, come to me, boy.*

2. The **SUBJECT** of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of; the **PREDICATE** is that which is stated of the Subject, and may be either a neuter verb, a noun or adjective with the copula (*esse, fieri, &c.*), or a transitive verb with its object.

One or more words, essential to the grammatical completeness of a sentence, may be omitted: this is called **ELLIPSIS**, and the sentence is called an **Elliptical Sentence**.

Ellipsis is most frequent in the case of the Copula (§ 34, II.), and in Exclamatory and Imperative sentences.

3. The Subject or Predicate of a sentence may be modified either by single words, or by a phrase or clause. The modifying word, phrase, or clause may itself be modified in the same way.

A single modifying word is generally either an Adjective, an Adverb, an Appositive, or the oblique case of a Noun.

Thus in the sentence *puer formosus venit, a handsome boy came*, the adjective *formosus* modifies the subject *puer*; in the sentence *celeriter venit, he came fast*, the adverb *celeriter* modifies the predicate *venit*.

The modifying word is sometimes said to Limit the word to which it belongs: as in the sentence, *video pueri patrem, I see the boy's father*, the genitive *pueri* limits *patrem*.

4. A **PHRASE** is a group of words, without subject or predicate of its own, used simply as an Adjective or Adverb.

Thus in the sentence *erat puer eximiae formae*, *he was a boy of remarkable beauty*, the words *eximiae formae* are used for the adjective *formosus*, and are called an **ADJECTIVE PHRASE**; in the sentence *magna cum celeritate venit*, *he came with great speed*, the words *magna cum celeritate* are used for the adverb *celeriter*, and are called an **ADVERBIAL PHRASE**.

5. A **CLAUSE** is a group of words forming part of a sentence, and having a Subject and Predicate of its own.

Thus in the sentence *puer qui heri venit formosus erat*, *the boy who came yesterday was handsome*, the words *qui heri venit* are a **RELATIVE CLAUSE**; in the sentence *puer si cras veniat acceptus sit*, *if the boy should come to-morrow, he would be welcome*, the words *si cras veniat* are a **CONDITIONAL CLAUSE**.

6. When a Clause is used as the Subject or Object of a Verb, it is called a **SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE** (See § 70, and Supp. p. 137).

Substantive Clauses are the following:—

1. The **INFINITIVE**, with or without a Subject-Accusative, (§§ 58, IV.; 67, I., 2);

2. Clauses introduced by *ut* or *quod* (§ 70);

3. **INDIRECT QUESTIONS** (§ 67, I. 1).

7. When a Clause is used to modify the Subject or Predicate of a sentence, it is called a **SUBORDINATE CLAUSE** (See §§ 59–66).

Subordinate Clauses are the following:—

1. **CONDITIONAL CLAUSES** (§ 59); these include,

a. **Comparative Clauses** (with *tamquam*, *quasi*, *veluti*, etc., § 61, 1).

b. **Concessive Clauses** (with *quamvis*, *etiam*, etc., § 61, 2, 3);

c. **Temporal Clauses** (with *cum*, *postquam*, etc., § 62);

2. **CAUSAL CLAUSES** (with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, § 63);

3. **FINAL CLAUSES** (with *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, § 64);

4. **CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES** (with *ut*, *quin*, *quominus*, § 65);

5. **INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES** (with *Relatives*, § 66).

NOTE. — Any clause introduced by a Relative is called a **RELATIVE CLAUSE**, and may belong to either of the classes enumerated above (See “Latin Composition,” Lesson XXXVI.). When introduced simply by way of explanation, and not included in either of the other classes, it is classed as an **INTERMEDIATE CLAUSE**.

8. A **SIMPLE SENTENCE** is one which contains no Subordinate Clause.

NOTE. — The subject or object of a simple sentence may be a Substantive Clause: thus in the sentence *dicitur puerum venisse*, *it is said that the boy came*, the clause *puerum venisse* is the subject of *dicitur*.

9. A **COMPOUND SENTENCE** is one of which either the Subject or Predicate is modified by a Subordinate Clause.

NOTE. — A sentence made up of two or more simple sentences united by conjunctions is sometimes called a Compound Sentence.

A sentence modified by a Conditional Clause is called a **CONDITIONAL SENTENCE**.

When two or more clauses, in the same sentence, are independent of one another, they are said to be **CO-ORDINATE**.

10. Sentences or Co-ordinate Clauses are regularly connected by means of Conjunctions; but frequently in Latin — very rarely in English — sentences are connected by Relatives (§ 48, IV.).

NOTE. — In this case the relative is often best translated in English by a conjunction with a demonstrative: as in the clause *quo cum venisset*, *and when he had come there*.

11. **CONJUNCTIONS** are divided into two classes, **COORDINATE** and **SUBORDINATE**.

Co-ordinate Conjunctions are classified as follows: —

1. **COPULATIVE** (*et*, *-que*, *atque*, *neque*), which simply connect words or sentences;

2. **ADVERSATIVE** (*sed*, *at*, *atqui*, *autem*, etc.), which denote Opposition;

3. **DISJUNCTIVE** (*aut*, *vel*, *-ve*, *sive*), which express Choice or Alternative;

4. **CAUSAL** (*nam*, *enim*), which introduce a Cause;

5. **ILLATIVE** (*itaque*, *ergo*, *igitur*), which express Inference or Result.

12. In analyzing a Sentence or Clause, ascertain, *first*, the words which serve as simple Subject and Predicate; *secondly*, the several Modifications of subject and predicate, whether word, phrase, or clause.

This process should be followed with all the successive modifications, until the relation of each to the subject or predicate has been pointed out.

NOTE. — A word, phrase, or clause modifying a Noun is called an Adjective Modifier; when modifying a Verb or Adjective, it is called an Adverbial Modifier.

Clauses should be further classified as in ¶ 7, above.

EXAMPLE. — *Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano* (Cæs. B. G. I., I.). In this sentence, the simple subject is *pars*, and the predicate *initium capit*. The subject *pars* is modified (1) by the numeral adjective *una*, (2) by the limiting genitive *eorum*, and (3) by the relative (intermediate) clause *quam . . . dictum est*. In the predicate, *initium* is the direct object of *capit*, which is modified by the adverbial phrase *a flumine* with the appositive *Rhodano*. In the relative clause *quam . . . dictum est*, the predicate is *dictum est*, and the subject the substantive clause *quam Gallos obtinere*, — *Gallos* being the accusative-subject, and *quam* the object, of *obtinere*.

For an example of analysis in *Oratio Obliqua*, see Note to Chap. XIII., p. 59 of this book.

Besides analyzing a sentence, the learner should be prepared to *PARSE* each word by going through all its forms of Declension or Conjugation; and by giving its construction according to the rules of Syntax. The latter process is called *CONSTRUING*, which word is also sometimes used to signify literal translation.

The practice of free or idiomatic translation is very valuable as a help in understanding the true spirit and meaning of the Latin, and in acquiring the art of easy and correct expression in English. But it should not be attempted, until the learner has acquired the habit of strict accuracy in literal rendering, and in the analysis of sentences.

VOCABULARY.

I. LATIN AND ENGLISH.

NOTE.—Verbs of the first and fourth conjugations, of which only the infinitive is given, are conjugated regularly. When a compound verb is divided by a hyphen, — as *ab-dūco*, — its conjugation will be found under the simple form: thus, *dūco, ducere, duxi, ductum*.

A. Aulus, a Roman prænomen.
ā, ab, prep. (abl.), *away from, by, on the side of*.
abdo, ere, -didi, -ditum, *hide*.
ab-eo, *go away*.
ab-dūco, *lead away*.
absque, prep. (abl.), *without*.
abs-tīneo (tēneo), *abstain, refrain*.
ab-sum, *be absent or distant*.
ac—atque (before consonant), *and, as*.
ācanthis, idis, f., *goldfinch*.
ācanthus, i, m., *bear's-foot*.
accēdo, ere, cessi, cessum, *be added to*.
acceptus, a, um, *acceptable*.
accīdo, ere, idi, *happen*.
ac-cīpio (cāpio), *receive*.
accūsō, āre, *accuse*.
ācer, cris, cre, *keen, vigorous*.
ācer, ēris, n., *maple*.
ācūtus, a, um, *sharp*.
ācies, ēi, f., *line of battle*.
acriter (acer), adv., *keenly*.
activē, adv., *actively (gram.)*.
ād, prep. (acc.), *to, towards; (with numbers) about*.
ad-curro or *accurro*, *run up*.
ad-dūco, *lead, induce*.
adflo, āre, *blow towards*.
adgrēdior, i, gressus, *approach, attack*.

ād-hībeo (hābeo), ēre, *have near, bring in*.
adhuc, adv., *hitherto, as yet*.
admīror, āri, *wonder, admire*.
ad-mitto, *admit, let go: ēquo admisso, at full gallop*.
ādōlescentia, ae, f., *youth*.
ād-ōrior, *begin, attack*.
adscendo, ere, di, sum, *mount, ascend*.
adscensus, ūs, m., *ascent*.
adscisco, ēre, scīvi, scītum, *receive, admit*.
ad-sum, *be at hand*.
aduncus, a, um, *hooked*.
adventus, ūs, m., *coming, approach*.
adversus, a, um, *unfavorable*.
aedīfīcium, n., *building*.
Aedui, *Aeduan*, a Gallic tribe between the Loire and Rhone.
aegrē, -grius, -gerrīme, *with difficulty*.
Aemilius, l., a Roman officer.
aequo, āre, *make equal*.
aequor, ōris, n., *level, sea*.
aequus, a, um, *right, just*.
aes, aeris, n., *copper, money*.
aestas, ātis, f., *summer*.
aetas, ātis, f., *age (in years)*.
aevum, i, n., *age (period)*.
af-fīcio (fācio), *affect with, disturb*.

affinitas, ātis, F., *alliance, kin.*
 āger, agri, M., *field, territory.*
 aggrēdiōr, i, gressus, *attack.*
 agmen, -inis, N., *body of troops*
 (on march); primum, *van*;
 nōvissimum, *rear.*
 agnātus, a, um, *relative (on*
the father's side).
 ag-nosco, *recognize.*
 āgo, agēre, āgi, actum, *lead,*
drive, treat, do.
 āio (defect. § 38, II.), *say.*
 ales, itis, winged (bird).
 alga, ae, F., *seaweed.*
 āliēnus, a, um, *another's; un-*
favorable.
 āliquis (§ 21, III.), *some.*
 āliunde, *from elsewhere.*
 ālius, a, ud; gen. ius, *other;*
 al. . . al., *some . . . others.*
 Allobrōges, um, a Gallic tribe
 near the Alps.
 almus, a, um, *benign, cherish-*
ing.
 ālo, ēre, ui, itum, *feed, nour-*
ish.
 Alpes, ium, F., *Alps.*
 altitūdo, inis, F., *height, depth.*
 alter (§ 16, I.), *the other (of*
two).
 altus, a, um, *high, deep.*
 Ambarri, a Gallic tribe on the
 Saone.
 ambo (§ 19, I. 2), *both.*
 āmicītia, ae, F., *friendship.*
 amictus, ūs, M., *garment.*
 āmicus, a, um, *friendly, friend.*
 āmīta, ae, F., *aunt.*
 āmītinus, a, *cousin.*
 ā-mitto, *lose.*
 amnis, is, M., *river.*
 āmo, āre, love.
 āmoenus, a, um, *pleasant.*
 āmor, ōris, M., *love.*
 amphōra, ae, F., *water-jar.*
 amplius, adv. (compar. of am-
 plē), *more, further.*
 anceps, cīpitis, *doubtful.*
 ancilla, ae, F., *maid-servant.*
 angustus, a, um, *narrow.*

angustiae, ārum, F. (pl.),
narrow pass.
 ānimadverto (ānimum adv.),
 ēre, ti, sum, *give heed to;*
proceed against, punish.
 ānimus, M., *mind, temper.*
 annus, i, M., *year.*
 annuus, a, um, *a-year, yearly.*
 ānūlus, i, M., *ring.*
 ante, prep. (acc.) or adv., *be-*
fore.
 anteā, adv., *beforehand, for-*
merly.
 antiquus, a, um, *ancient.*
 āper, apri, M., *wild boar.*
 āpertus, part. (āpērio), *open.*
 appello, āre, name, call.
 apricus, a, um, *sunny.*
 aprilis, e, adj., *of April.*
 āpūd, prep. (acc.), *in presence*
of, among.
 āqua, ae, F., *water.*
 Aquilōia, ae, F., a town on
 the north Adriatic.
 Aquitāni, ōrum, and Aquitā-
 nia, ae, F., people and dis-
 trict of S. W. Gaul.
 Arar, āris, acc. im; ab. e, i,
 M., the Saone (river).
 arbitror, āri, *believe, suppose.*
 arbor, ōris, F., *tree.*
 arcitēnens, tis, M., *archer.*
 arduus, a, um, *sleep, difficult.*
 argentum, i, N., *silver.*
 āries, ētis, M., *ram.*
 armā, ōrum, N. pl., *arms, de-*
fensive weapons.
 armus, i, M., *shoulder (of horse).*
 ar-rīpio, (rāpio), *seize.*
 artus, ūs, M., *limb, joint.*
 artus, a, um (arctus), *close,*
scanty.
 ārundo, inis, F., *reed.*
 arvum, i, N., *field.*
 ascensus = adsoensus.
 asper, ēra, ērum, *rough.*
 at (ast), conj., *but.*
 atque = ac, conj., *and, as.*
 attingo, ēre, attīgi, attactum
 (tango), *touch, border on.*

attollo, ēre, *lift*.
attōnitus, a, um, *thunder-struck*.
auctoritas, ātis, F., *authority, influence*.
audācia, ae, F., *boldness*.
audāciter (audacter), cius, *boldly*.
audeo, ēre, ausus (§ 35, II.), *dare*.
augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, *increase, enlarge*.
aurum, i, N., *gold*.
aut, conj., *either, or*.
autem, conj., *but, moreover*.
autumnus, i, M., *autumn*.
auxilium, i, N., *aid*; pl. *auxiliaries*.
āverto, ēre, ti, sum, *turn aside*.
āvis, is, F., *bird*.
āvuncūlus, i, M., *uncle*.
āvus, i, M., *grandfather*.
axis, is, M., *axle, north*.

Belgao, ārum, M., *people of northern Gaul*.
bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*.
bello, āre, *fight, make war*.
bellua, ae, F., *beast*.
bellum, i, N., *war*.
bēnē, adv., *well*.
bēnēficiūm, i, N., *favor*.
biduum, i, N., *two days*.
Bibracte, N., *the chief town of the Aedui (near Autun)*.
biennium, i, N., *period of two years*.
bipartito, adv., *in two divisions*.
Bituriges, um, *a tribe of western Gaul*.
Boii, ōrum, *a Celtic tribe, found both in Gaul and Germany (Bohemia)*.
bōnitas, ātis, F., *kindness, goodness*.
bōnus, a, um, *good, friendly*.
brāchium, i, N., *arm*.
brēvis, e, *short*.
brūma, ae, F., *frost, winter*.
brūtus, a, um, *brute*.

C. Caius, a Roman prænomen, properly *Gaius*.
cādo, ēre, cēcidi, cāsum, *fall*.
caedo, ēre, cēcidi, caesum (comp. -cido, -cīsum), *cut*.
caelo, āre, *carve*.
caelum, i, N. (pl. i, M.), *sky*.
Caesar C. Julius, the Roman emperor during this war; born B.C. 100.
cālāmītas, ātis, F., *disaster, calamity*.
cālendae = *kālendae*.
campus, i, M., *field*.
cancer, cri (or ēris), M., *crab*.
candescō, ēre, inceptive, from *cāneo*, ēre, *be white or hoary*.
cānis, is, M., *dog*. [sing.]
cāno, ēre, cēcīni, cantum, *sing*.
cānus, a, um, *gray*; pl. *gray hair*.
cāper, pri, M., *goat*.
cāpio, capere, cēpi, captum (comp. -cīpio, -ceptum), *take, receive*.
caprinus, a, um, *of a goat*.
captivus, a, um, *captive*.
cāpūt, itis, N., *head*.
cārīna, ae, F., *keel*.
carmen, inis, N., *song*.
cāro, carnis, F., *flesh*.
carrus, i, M., *cart, waggon*.
cārus, a, um, *dear*.
Cassianus, a, um, *belonging to Cassius*.
cassis, Idis, F., *helmet*.
casses, ium (pl.), M., *nets*.
Cassius, L., a Roman consul, defeated and slain by the Helvetians, B.C. 107.
castellum, i, N., *fortress*.
Casticus, i, a Sequanian.
castra, ōrum, N. (pl.), *camp*.
castrum, i, *fort*.
cāsus, ūs, M., *chance, accident*.
Catamantalēdes, is, a Sequanian chief.
cātēna, ae, F., *chain*.
cātūlus, i, M., *puppy, whelp*.
causa (caussa), ae, F., *cause, reason*.

cāvec, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *be-ware.*

cāvo, āre, *hollow.*

cāvus, a, um, *hollow.*

cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *yield.*

cēlēriter (cēlē), *quickly.*

cēlo, āre, *hide.*

celsus, a, um, *lofty.*

Celtao, ārum, *Celts.*

censeo, ēre, ui, *think, decide.*

census, ūs, M., *reckoning.*

Centrōnes, um, a Gallic tribe near the Alps.

centum, a *hundred.*

cerno, ēre, *perceive.*

certus, a, um, *certain, sure; certiore facere, inform.*

cībāria, N., pl., and

cībus, i, M., *food, provisions.*

circitēr, prep. (acc.) or adv., *about.*

circuitus, ūs, M., *circuit.*

circum, prep. (acc.), *about, around.*

circum-vēnio, *come around.*

cīterior, cītimus (§ 17, III.), *on this side.*

citrā, prep. (acc.), *this side of.*

cītus, a, um, *swift.*

cīvis, is, M., *citizen.*

cīvitas, ātis, F., *city, state.*

clārus, a, um, *famous.*

claudo, ēre, si, sum (comp. clūd), *shut.*

clāva, ae, F., *club.*

clāvis, is, F., *key.*

clāvus, i, M., *bar.*

cliens, tis, M., *client* (one attached to a patron, and protected by him).

co-ēmo, *buy.*

coepi (defect. § 38, I.), *began.*

co-erceo, ēre, ui, itum, (arceo), *restrain.*

cognātus, a, um, *kindred* (on the mother's side).

cognītus, part., *well known; from*

cognosco, ēre, nōvi, nītum, *find out, know.*

cōgo, ēre, cōēgi, coactum, *bring together, force, compel.*

co-hortor, āri, *cheer, encourage.*

collēga, ae, M., *colleague.*

colligo, āre, *bind together.*

collis, is, M., *hill.*

collōco, āre, *fix, place.*

col-lōquor, *converse.*

cōlo, ēre, ui, cultum, *cultivate, worship.*

cōlōro, āre, *color.*

cōlum, i, N., *strainer.*

cōlumna, ae, F., *column.*

cōlus, i, M., *distaff.*

combūro, ēre, ussi, ustum, *burn up.*

cōmēs, itis, M., *companion.*

cōmīnus, adv., *close, at hand.*

cōmis, e, *gentle.*

commēmōro, āre, *call to mind, mention.*

commeo, āre, *go to and fro, resort.*

com-mitto, *commit, engage* (battle).

commōdē, *handily.*

commōdus, a, um, *convenient.*

commōnē-facio, *remind.*

com-mōveo, *alarm, excite.*

commūnio, īre, *fortify.*

commūtātio, ōnis, F., *change.*

commūto, āre, *change.*

compāro, āre, *provide.*

compērio, īre, pēri, pertum, *find.*

compesco, ēre, ui, *check.*

complector, i, xus, *embrace.*

compleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *fill up.*

complūres, ia, pl., *very many.*

com-pōno, *settle.*

comporto, āre, *gather, bring together.*

cōnātum, i, N.; and

cōnātus, ūs, M., *attempt, effort.*

concēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *yield, grant.*

concīdo, ere, cīdi, cīsum (caedo), *kill, cut down.*

concilio, āre, win, conciliate.
concilium, i, N., council, assembly.
conculco, āre, trample.
concursum, ūs, M., running together.
conditio (cio), ōnis, M., condition.
condo, dēre, dīdi, dītum, hide.
condōno, āre, pardon.
con-dūco, bring together.
con-fēro, bring, betake, compare.
confertus, a, um, close, crowded.
con-ficio (fācio), accomplish, finish, make out.
confido, ēre, fīsus, trust.
confirmo, āre, strengthen, establish.
con-jicio (jācio), throw.
conjūrātio, ōnis, F., conspiracy.
conjux (nx), jūgis, F., wife.
cōnor, āri, attempt.
con-qui-ro (quaero), seek.
consanguineus, a, um, blood-kindred.
conscisco, ēre, scīvi, scītum, decree; mortem sibi, commit suicide.
conscious, a, um, conscious.
conscribo, ēre, psi, ptum, enrol.
con-sēquor, follow close, overtake, attain.
Considius, i., a Roman officer.
consido, ēre, sēdi, sessum, sit down, encamp.
consilium, i, N., design, plan.
consisto, ēre, stīti, stītum, stand firm.
consōbrinus, a, cousin.
consōlor, āri, console.
consors, tis, fellow, companion.
conspectus, ūs, M., sight.
conspīcor, āri, view.
constituo, ēre, ui, ūtum, resolve, establish.
consul, ūlis, M., consul (chief magistrate of Rome).

consuesco, ēre, suēvi, suētum (plup. -suēram), be accustomed or wont.
constilo, ēre, ui, tum, consult.
con-sūmo, consume, destroy.
contemno, ēre, psi, ptum, despise.
contendo, ēre, di, tum, march, hasten, contend.
continenter, continually.
con-tīneo (tēneo), hold back, keep in.
contrā, prep. (acc.), against; adv., on the other hand.
contrārius, a, um, opposite.
contūmēlia, ae, F., affront, disgrace.
convālesco, ēre, ui, grow strong.
con-vēnio, come together.
conventus, ūs, M., assembly.
convertō, ēre, ti, sum, turn, turn aside.
convōco, āre, call together.
cōpia, ae, F., abundance; pl., troops, forces.
cōplōsus, a, um, wealthy, abounding.
cor, cordis, N., heart.
corrumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, corrupt.
cōrus, i (or caurus), M., north-west wind.
corpūs, ōris, N., body.
Crassus, M., a Roman general and statesman.
crēdūlus, a, um, trustful.
crēmo, āre, burn.
creo, āre, choose, elect.
cresco, ēre, crēvi, crētum, grow.
crimen, īnis, N., criminal charge.
cruor, ōris, M., spill blood.
culpa, ae, F., fault.
cultus, ūs, M., culture, refinement.
cum = quum, conj., when, since, though.
cum, prep. (abl.), with.
-cumque, -ever.

cūmēra, ae, f., *chest* (for grain), *bin*.
 cūpīdē, *eagerly*.
 cūpīditas, ātis, f., *eagerness*, *avarice*.
 cūpīdo, īnis, f., *eager desire*.
 cūpīdus, a, um, *eager*, *covetous* (with gen.).
 cūpio, ēre, īvi, itum, *desire*; (with dat.), *wish well*.
 cūro, āre, *take care of*.
 curro, ēre, cūcurri, cursum, *run*.
 custos, ōdis, m., *guard*.
 cutis, is, f., *skin*.

damno, āre, *condemn*.
 damnum, i, n., *loss*, *damage*.
 dē, prep. (abl.), *from*, *about*.
 dēbeo, ēre, ui, itum, *owe*; (w. infin.) *ought*.
 dēcem, *ten*.
 dē-cīpio, *deceive*.
 dēcor, ōris, m., *beauty*.
 dēcūrio, ōnis, m., *captain of cavalry*. [cīus, i, m. *prisoner*.]
 dēcus, ōris, n., *honor*. dediti-
 dēditio, ōnis, f., *surrender*.
 dē-do, *surrender*.
 dēfendo, ēre, di, sum, *ward off*, *defend*.
 dēfessus, a, um, *wearied out*.
 dē-fīcio, *fail*, *desert*.
 dē-fluo, *flow down*. *deinde*,
 dē-jīcio, *cast down*. [then, next.
 dēlecto, āre, *delight*.
 dēlibēro, āre, *weigh*, *deliberate*.
 dēlligo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, *choose*.
 dēmīnuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, *lessen*.
 dēmonstro, āre, *show*, *prove*.
 dēmum, adv., *at last*, *indeed*.
 dēnique, adv., *at length*.
 dē-pōno, *lay aside*.
 dēpōpūlo, āre, or -or, āri, *ravage*.
 dēprēcātor, ōris, m., *advocate*, *intercessor*.
 dēsīgno, āre, *mark out*, *designate*.
 dēspēro, āre, *despair*.

dēsisto, ēre, stīti, stītum, *cease*.
 dēspīcio, ere, spexi, spectum, *look down on*, *despise*.
 destringo, ēre, inxi, ictum, *draw out*.
 dē-sum, *be wanting or absent*.
 dēterreo, *frighten from*, *deter*.
 dētraho, ēre, xi, ctum, *tear off*.
 deus, m., *a god*, *divinity* (§ 10, 7).
 dextra (mānus), ae, f., *right hand*.
 dīco, āre, *dedicate*.
 dico, ēre, dixi, dictum, *say*, *appoint*, *call*, *plead*.
 dictio, ōnis, f., *plea*.
 dies, ēi, m., *day*; f. (§ 13), *diem ex die*, *from day to day*.
 diffēro, ferre, distūli, dilātum, *differ*, *defer*.
 diffīcollis, e, *difficult*.
 diffīdo, ēre, isus (§ 35, II.), *distrust*.
 diffīndo, ēre, fīdi, fissum, *cut*, *split*.
 dimīdium, i, n., *half*.
 dī-mitto, *send away*, *dismiss*.
 dis, dītis = *dives*, *rich*.
 discēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *depart*.
 disco, ēre, dīdici, *learn*.
 dis-jīcio (-jācio), *throw*, *scatter*.
 dispōno, *arrange*, *distribute*.
 dis-sīmūlo, *conceal by deceit*.
 ditissīmus (superl.), *richest*.
 diū, adv., *for a long time*; comp., diūtius, *longer*.
 diūturnus, a, um, *long-continued*.
 dives, itis; dis, dītis, *rich*.
 Divīco, ōnis, *an aged Helvetian chief*.
 divīdo, ēre, visi, visum, *divide*, *separate*.
 Divitiācus, *an Æduan chief*, *leader of the party of the Druids*, and *a confidential*

friend of Cæsar. The name is thought to be a Druidical title.

divus, a, um, *divine*.

do, *dāre*, *dēdi*, *dātum* (comp. -*dēre*, -*dīdi*, -*dītum*), *give*.

dōceo, *ēre*, *ui*, *ītum*, *teach*.

doctor, *ōris*, M., *teacher*.

doctus, a, um, part. (*dōceo*), *learned*, *skilled*.

dōleo, *ēre*, *ui*, *grieve*, *suffer*.

dōlor, *ōris*, M., *pain*, *grief*.

dōlus, I, M., *fraud*, *craft*.

dōmīnor, *āri*, *rule*.

dōmīnus, I, M., *lord*, *master*.

dōmus, *ūs*, F., *house*, *home* (§ 55, III.).

dūbitatio, *ōnis*, F., *doubt*, *hesitation*.

dūbito, *āre*, *doubt*, *hesitate*.

dūbius, a, um, *doubtful*.

dūcenti, *ae*, a, *two hundred*.

dūco, *duocere*, *duxi*, *ductum*, *lead*, *suppose*, *put off*.

dulcis, e, *sweet*.

dum, conj., *while*, *until*.

Dumodrix, *īgis*, an ambitious and treacherous Æduan chief.

duo, *ae*, o, *two* (§ 18, I. 2).

duodēcim, *twelve*.

dux, *dūcis*, M., *leader*, *guide*.

e, *ex*, prep. (abl.), *out of*, *from*.

ēdo, *ēre* (*easse*), *ēdi*, *ēsum* (§ 37, v.), *eat*.

ē-do, *give forth*.

ē-dūco, *lead forth*.

edūco, *āre*, *educate*, *train*.

effēmīno, *āre*, *weaken*, *soften*.

effēro, *ferre*, *extūli*, *ēlātum*, *carry forth*, *exalt*.

ef-fūgio, *escape*.

ef-fīcio, *effect*, *render*.

ēgrēdior, I, *gressus*, *go forth*.

ēgrēgius, a, um, *extraordinary*, *excellent*.

ēmitto, *send forth*, *let go*.

ēmīnus, adv., *afar*.

ēmo, *ēre*, *ēmi*, *emptum* (comp. *īmo*), *buy*.

ēnim, conj., *for*.

ensis, *is*, M., *sword*.

ēnūmēro, *āre*, *count over*.

ēnuncio, *āre*, *announce*.

eo, *ire*, *ivi*, *ītum* (§ 37, VI.), *go*.

eo (*is*), adj. pron. (abl.); with compar. *as*, *by so much*: *quo plus . . . eo minus*, *the more . . . the less*.

eo, adv., *thither*.

eōdem, adv., *to the same place*.

ēques, *ītis*, M., *horseman*; pl., *cavalry*.

ēquestris, e, *of cavalry*.

ēquīnus, a, um, *of a horse*.

ēquītātus, *ūs*, M., *troop of horse*.

ēripio, *ēre*, *ui*, *reptum*, *snatch away*.

esca, *ae*, F., *food*.

et, conj., *and*, *even*; *et . . . et*, *both . . . and*.

etiam, conj., *also*, *even*.

ēvello, *ēre*, *evelli*, *evulsam*, *pluck out*.

ex=e, prep. (abl.), *out of*, *from*.

ex-cīpio (*cāpio*), *receive*, *catch*.

exemplum, I, N., *example*.

ex-eo (§ 33, III.), *go forth*.

exercitus, *ūs*, M., *army*.

exhīlāro, *āre*, *gladden*.

existimatio, *ōnis*, F., *esteem*.

existimo, *āre*, *think*, *consider*.

expēditus, a, um, *unhindered*, *light-armed*.

explōrator, *ōris*, M., *scout*.

expugno, *āre*, *storm*, *take by violence*.

ex-sēquor, *follow to the end*.

expecto, *āre*, *wait for*.

extrā, prep. (acc.), *outside of*.

extrēmus, a, um (superl. § 17, III.), *outmost*, *remotest*.

exūro, *ēre*, *ussī*, *ustum*, *burn up*.

fāba, *ae*, F., *bean*.

fāber, *bri*, M., *smith*.

fābūla, ae, F., *story, fable*.
fābūla, ae, F. (dim. of *fāba*).
fācīlis, e, *easy*; -e, *easily*.
fācīnus, ōris, N., *deed of violence*.
fācio, ēre, fēci, factum (comp. -fīcēre, -fectum), *make, do*.
fācūltas, ātis, F., *opportunity*.
fallo, ēre, fēfelli, falsum, *deceive*.
fāma, ae, F., *fame*.
fāmes, is, F., *hunger, famine*.
fāmīlia, ae, F., *family, body of slaves, clan*.
fāmīliāris, e, *friendly, intimate*.
fās, N. (indecl.), *right*.
fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum (w. dat.), *favor*.
fērē, adv., *almost, generally*.
fērio, ire, *strike*.
fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum (§ 37, IV.), *bear, bring*.
ferrum, i, N., *iron, steel*.
fīdes, ei, F., *faith, pledge*.
fīdus, a, um, *faithful*.
fīgo, ēre, xi, xum, *fix*.
fīlia, ae, F. (§ 9, 4), *daughter*.
fīlius, i, M. (§ 10, 4, 5), *son*.
fīnis, is, M., F., *end*; pl., *bounds, territory*.
fīnītīmus, a, um, *neighboring*.
fīrmo, āre, *strengthen*.
fīo, fīeri, factus (irreg. pass. of *fācio*, § 37, VII.), *be made, become, happen*.
fīrmus, a, um, *firm, steadfast*.
fīlāgītīum, i, N., *disgrace*.
fīlāgītō, āre, *demand*.
fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *weep*.
flos, flōris, M., *flower*.
flo, flāre, *blow*.
flōreo, ēre, *bloom*.
fluctus, ūs, M., *wave*.
flūmen, īnis, N., *stream, river*.
fluo, ēre, fluxi, fluxum, *flow*.
fōrās, adv., *out of doors*.
formōsus, a, um, *beautiful*.
formīdo, āre, *dread*.
formīdo, īnis, F., *dread*.
fors, tis, F., *chance*.

fortis, e *brave*.
fortītēr, adv., *bravely*.
fortītūdo, īnis, F., *bravery*.
fortūna, ae, F., *fortune*.
forceps, īpis, M., *tongs*.
forfex, īcis, F., *shears*.
forpex, īcis, F., *curling-irons*.
fossa, ae, F., *ditch*.
frango, ēre, frēgi, fractum, *break*.
frāter, tris, M., *brother*.
frātria, ae, F., *brother's wife*.
frāternus, a, um, *brotherly*.
fraus, dis, F., *fraud, guilt*.
frēnum, i, N., *bridle, curb*.
frētum, i, N., *strait, sea*.
frētus, a, um, *relying*.
frīgus, ōris, N., *cold*.
frons, dis, F., *leaf*.
frons, tis, F., *brow*.
fructus, ūs, M., *fruit (of trees)*.
frūges, um (pl.), F., *fruits (of the earth)*.
frūgi (indecl.), *worthy, useful*.
frūmentārius, a, um, *abounding in corn; res frumentaria, stock of grain*.
frūmentum, i, N., *corn*.
frustrā, adv., *in vain*.
fūcus, i, M., *red dye, stain*.
fūga, ae, F., *flight*.
fūgio, ēre, fūgi, itum, N., *flee*.
fūgo, āre, *put to flight*.
fulgeo, ēre, fulsi, *shine*.
fundo, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour*.
fūror, ōris, M., *madness*.
fūgītīvus, M., *fugitive*.
fur, fūris, *thief*.
fūro, ere, ui, *rage*.
fustis, is, M., *cudgel*.
fūtūrus, a, um, *future*.

Gābīnius, A., consul at the outbreak of the Helvetian war, B.C. 58.
gālea, ae, F., *helmet*.
Galli, ōrum, inhabitants of
Gallia, ae, F., Gaul, now *France*.
G. cisalpina included all of Italy north of *Tuscany*.

Gārumna, ae, m., the *Garonne*.
gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus (§ 35, II.), *be glad, rejoice*.

gaudium, i, n., *joy*.

gēmini, ae, a, *twin*.

gēner, i, m., *son-in-law*.

gēnēro, āre, *beget*.

Gēnēva, ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges, on the Leman Lake, occupied as a Roman garrison.

gēnitor, ōris, m., *father*.

gēnitrix, icis, f., *mother*.

Germani, ōrum, *Germans*.

gēro, ēre, gēsal, gestum, *bear, carry on*.

gigno, ēre, gēnui, gēnītum, *beget, produce*. **glādius**, i, m.,

glōria, ae, f., *glory*. [*sword*.

glōrior, āri, *boast*.

glōs, ōris, f., *husband's sister*.

Graiocēli, ōrum, a tribe near the Graian Alps.

grandaevus, a, um, *aged*.

grānum, i, n., *grain*.

grātia, ae, f., *favor, influence*.

grātus, a, um, *pleasing, grateful*.

grāvis, e, *weighty, severe*.

grāviter, adv., *seriously*; **ferre**, *take ill*.

gusto, āre, *taste*.

gutta, ae, f., *drop*.

hābeo, ēre, ui, itum (comp. hīb-), *have, hold, consider*.

hasta, ae, f., *spear*.

haud, adv., *not*.

Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian*.

hesternus, a, um, *of yesterday* (hēri).

hibernus, a, um, *wintry*; n. pl. (castra), *winter-quarters*.

hic, haec, hoc (§ 20), *this*;

hoc (abl.), *on this account*.

hic, adv., *here*.

hiēmo, āre, *pass the winter*.

hiems (ps), ēmis, f., *winter*.

hīrūdo, inis, f., *leech*.

hīrundo, inis, *swallow*.

Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain*.

hōdiernus, a, um, *of to-day* (hōdiē).

hōmo, inis, m., *man*.

hōnor, ōris, m., *honor*.

hōra, ae, f., *hour*.

hortor, āri, *cheer, exhort, urge*.

hostis, is, m., *enemy*; pl., *the enemy*.

hūmānitas, ātis, f., *culture, refinement*.

hūmērus, i, m., *shoulder*.

hūmīdus, a, um, *wet*.

hūmus, i, f., *ground*.

Ibi, adv., *there*.

ictus, ūs, m., *blow*.

idem, eādem, *Idem*, *same*.

idūs, uum, f. (pl.), *Ides* (13th or 15th of the month, § 83).

ignāvus, a, um, *sllothful*.

ignis, is, m., *fire, flame*.

ignitus, a, um, *fiery, red-hot*.

ignōro, āre, *be ignorant of*.

ig-nosco (dat.), *pardon*.

ille, a, ud, *that, former* (§ 20).

illic, adv., *there*.

immōbilis, e, *unmovable*.

immortālis, e, *deathless*.

immōtus, a, um, *unmoved*.

impēdimentum, n., *hindrance*; pl., *baggage*.

impēdio, ire, *hinder*.

impendeo, pendēre, *overhang, threaten*.

impērium, i, n., *military command, authority*.

impēro, āre, *demand*; w. dat., *command*.

impētro, āre, *obtain by request*.

impētus, ūs, m., *attack*.

importo, āre, *bring in, import*.

imprōbus, a, um, *wicked*.

imprōvisō, adv., *suddenly, unforeseen*.

impūnē, adv., *with impunity*.

impūnitas, ātis, f., *impunity*.

imūsus, a, um (§ 17, III.), *lowest*.

in, prep. (acc.), *into, against*; (abl.), *in, on*.

incendo, ĕre, di, sum, set on fire.

in-cĭpio, begin.

incito, āre, stir up, excite.

incolō, ĕre, colui, cultum, inhabit.

incommōdum, i, n., disaster.

incredĭbilis, e, incredible.

inde, adv., thence.

indiciūm, i, n., testimony.

in-dūco, lead into, induce.

induo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, put on.

iners, tis, useless.

infensus, a, um, hostile.

in-fĕro, bring in or against.

infĕrus, a, um, below (§ 17, II.).

infestus, a, um, deadly, mischievous.

inflexo, ĕre, xi, xum, bend.

in-fluo, flow into.

ingĕnium, i, n., mind, genius.

inimicus, a, um, hostile.

initium, i, n., beginning.

injūria, ae, f., wrong, damage.

injussu (abl.), without orders.

inōpia, ae, f., need, scarcity.

inōpinans, tis, not expecting.

inops, opis, poor, helpless.

insciens, tis, not knowing.

in-sĕquor, follow close.

insidiae, ārum, f. (pl.), ambushade, plot.

insignis, e, noted; pl. neut., marks of distinction.

insolĕnter, haughtily.

in-stĭtuo (stātuo), teach, decree.

institūtum, i, n., institution.

insto, stāre, stĭti, press on.

instruo, ĕre, xi, ctum, draw up.

in-sum, be in.

intelligo, ĕre, exi, ectum, understand.

inter, prep. (acc.), among, between.

intercĕdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, come between.

inter-clūdo (claudo), shut or cut off.

interdiu, adv., by day.

interdum, now and then, meanwhile.

interea, in the mean time.

inter-ficio (fācio), kill.

intĕrim, meanwhile.

inter-mitto, cease, discontinue.

internĕcio, ōnis, f., massacre.

interpre, ŕtis, m., interpreter.

inter-sum, be between, or present with.

intervallum, i, n., interval.

invĭtus, a, um, unwilling, reluctant.

ipse, a, um, g., ipsius, self.

ira, ae, f., anger.

irritus, a, um, vain, void.

is, ea, id, g., ejus, that (§ 20, II.).

istinc, adv., from yonder place.

ita, adv., so, thus.

Itālia, ae, f., Italy.

itāque, therefore.

Item, likewise.

Itĕr, itinĕris, n., journey, march.

jācio, ĕre, jĕci, jactum (comp. -jĕcere, -jectum), throw.

jacto, āre, cast, utter, boast.

jam, now, already.

jūbeo, ĕre, jussi, jussum, order, bid.

jūcundus, a, um, pleasant, cheerful.

jūdicium, i, n., court, trial.

jūdlco, āre, judge.

jūgum, i, n., yoke, ridge.

jūmentum, i, n., pack-horse.

jungo, ĕre, nxi, notum, join.

Jūra, ae, m., Jura, the mountain frontier of Switzerland.

jūs, jūris, n., right.

jusjūrandum (§ 14, II. 2), oath.

justicia, ae, f., justice.

justus, a, um, just, honest.

jūvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, help.

kālendae, ārum, F. (pl.), *Calends* (1st of the month, § 83).

L. Lucius, a Roman praenomen.

Labiēnus, T., a Roman officer, Cæsar's lieutenant (afterwards of Pompey's party).

lābor, ōris, M., *labor, task.*

lābor, i, lapsus, glide, sink.

lācēro, āre, tear.

lācesso, ēre, ivi, itum, provoke, harass.

lacrima, ae, F., *tear.*

lācus, ūs, M., *lake.*

lāna, ae, F., *wool.*

largior, iri, bribe, bestow gifts.

largitio, ōnis, F., bribery; -iter,

lācē, widely. [largely, lavishly.

lātītūdo, inis, F., *width.*

Latobrigi, ōrum, a Gallic tribe on the upper Rhine.

lātro, ōnis, M., *robber.*

lātus, ōris, N., *side.*

lātus, a, um, wide.

laudo, āre, praise.

lōgātio, ōnis, F., *embassy.*

lōgātus, i, M. (part. of lēgo), *deputy, ambassador, or lieutenant.*

lōgio, ōnis, F., *legion* (6,000 men).

Lēmānus, i, M., *Lake Geneva.*

lōnītas, ātis, F., *smoothness, gentleness.*

leo, ōnis, M., *lion.*

lēpor, ōris, M., *grace.*

lēpus, ōris, M., *hare.*

lēvīr, iri, M., *husband's brother.*

lēvis, e, smooth.

lēvis, e, light.

lēvo, āre, lighten.

lex, lēgis, F., *law.*

libērālītas, ātis, F., *liberality.*

libērē, freely.

libēri, ōrum, M. (pl.), *children* (free-born).

libertas, ātis, F., *freedom.*

libra, ae, F., *balance.*

licet, licet, itus, bid (at auction).

licet, licet (impers. w. dat. § 39, I.), *it is permitted; mihi licet, I may.*

Lingōnes, um, a Gallic tribe on the upper Seine.

lingua, ae, F., *tongue, language.*

linter, tris, M., F. (§ 11, I. I), *boat, canoe.*

Liscus, i, the chief magistrate of the Ædui.

littērae, ārum, F. (pl.), *letter* (§ 14, II. I).

litus, ōris, N., *shore.*

lōcus, i, M. (pl. lōca), *place; lōco cēdēre, give way.*

longē, ius, issimē, far, by far.

longitūdo, inis, F., *length.*

longua, a, um, long.

lōquor, i, lōcūtus, speak.

lūceo, ēre, xi, shine.

lucror, āri, get profit.

lūdo, ēre, si, sum, play.

lūdus, i, M., *sport.*

lux, lūcis, F., *light.*

M. Marcus, a Roman praenomen.

mācer, cra, crum, lean.

māgis, maxīmē, more, most.

māgistrātus, ūs, M., *magistrate, office.*

magnōpērē, very much.

magnus, a, um (māior, maxīmus), great.

mājōres (compar. adj.), pl., *ancestors.*

māla, ae, F., *jaw.*

mālō, adv., ill.

mālēficiūm, i, N., *crime, wrong.*

mālinus, a, um, bad, wicked.

mālo, malle, mālui (§ 37, III.), *prefer.*

mālum, i, N., *apple.*

mālum, i, N., *mischievous; from*

mālus, a, um, bad, evil.

mālus, i, F., *apple-tree, mast.*

mando, āre, entrust, command.

mando, ēre, di, sum, gnaw, chew.

mānē (indecl.), *morning, early.*

māneo, ēre, mansi, stay, wait.

mānus, ūs, F., *hand, band, troop.*

māre, is, N., *sea.*

māritus, i, M., *husband.*

matāra, ae, F., *pike.*

māter, tris, F., *mother.*

mātertēra, ae, F., *aunt.*

mātrīmōnium, i, N., *marriage.*

Matrōna, ae, M., the river
Marne.

mātūro, āre, *hasten.*

mātūrus, a, um, *ripe, ready,*
early.

maximē, adv., *from*

maximus, a, um (superl. of
magnus), *greatest.*

mēdicīna, ae, F., *medicine.*

mēdius, a, um, *middle, midst.*

mēmōr, ōris, *mindful.*

mēmōrābilis, e, *memorable.*

mēmōria, ae, F., *memory.*

mendax, ācis, *false.*

mens, tis, F., *mind.*

mensa, ae, F., *table.*

mensis, is, M., *month.*

mercātor, ōris, M., *trader.*

merces, ēdis, F., *pay, wages.*

mēreo, ēre, ui, itum, and

mēreor, ēri, itus, *deserve.*

mergus, i, M., *waterfowl.*

mēritum, i, N., *merit, desert.*

merx, cis, F., *goods.*

Messāla, ae, M., a Roman
consul, B.C. 60.

messis, is, F., *harvest.*

mētiōr, īri, mensus, *measure.*

mētuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, *fear.*

mētus, ūs, M., *fear.*

meus, a, um (voc. M., mi), *my.*

miles, itis, M., *soldier.*

mille, pl. milia (§ 18, I. 3), a
thousand; passuum—a mile.

minimē, adv., *from*

minus, a, um (superl. of
parvus), *least.*

minuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, *lessen.*

minus, adv., *less*; si minus,
if not.

miser, ēra, ērum, *wretched.*

mitto, ēre, misi, missum,
send.

mōdo, adv., *only, just now.*

moenia, ium, *walls* (of houses).

mōlo, ēre, ui, itum, *grind.*

mōneo, ēre, ui, itum, *warn,*
advise.

mons, montis, M., *mountain.*

mōra, ae, F., *delay.*

mōrior, i (iri), mortuus (§ 35,
III.), *die.*

mōror, āri, *delay.*

mors, tis, F., *death.*

mōs, mōris, M., *manner, cus-*
tom; pl., *character.*

mōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum,
move.

mox, adv., *presently.*

mūlier, ēris, F., *woman.*

multitūdo, inis, F., *multitude.*

multo, *by much* (w. compar.),
abl. of

multus, a, um (plus, plurī-
mus), *much*; ad multam
noctem, *till late at night*;
pl., *many.*

mundus, i, M., *world, universe.*

mūnio, īre, *fortify.*

mūnitio, ōnis, F., *fortification.*

mūrus, i, M., *wall.*

mustēla, ae, F., *weasel.*

mūto, āre, *change.*

nam, conj., *for.*

Namēius, i, an Helvetian en-
voy.

narro, āre, *tell, relate.*

nascor, i, nātus, *be born, grow.*

nātūra, ae, F., *nature.*

nātus, i, M., *son.*

nāvis, is, F., *ship.*

nāvīta, ae (nauta), M., *sailor.*

nē, adv., *not*; conj., *lest*; ne
... quidem, *not even.*

nec = nēquē, adv., *nor.*

nēcessārius, a, um, *necessary,*
kindred; -o, *necessarily.*

nēfās (indecl.), *wrong.*

nēgo, āre, *deny.*

nēmo, d. inī (for gen., nullius;
abl., nullo), *no one.*

neo, nēre, nēvi, *spin.*

nēquam (indecl.), *worthless*.
nēque = *nec*, adv., *neither, nor*.
nervus, i, M., *sinew*.
nēve, neu, adv., *nor*.
nex, nēcis, F., *death* (by violence).
nī for **nīsi**, *unless*.
nihil (indecl.), *nothing*.
nihilōminus, adv., *none the less*.
nīl for **nihil**, *nothing*.
nīmīs, adv., *too much*.
nīsi, *unless*.
nīteo, ēre, *shine*.
nītor, i, **nīsus** (**nīxus**), *strive, rely*.
no, nāre, *swim*.
nōbīlis, e, *noble*.
nōbīlitas ātis, F., *nobility*.
nōceo, ēre, ui, **ītum**, *harm*.
noctu, adv., *by night*.
nōdus, i, M., *knot*.
nōlo, nolle, nolui (§ 37, II.), *be unwilling, refuse*.
nōmen, īnis, N., *name*.
nōmīnātīm, adv., *by names*.
non, *not*.
nondum, *not yet*.
nonnullus, a, um, *some* (generally pl.).
nonnumquam, *sometimes*.
Nōrēia, ae, F., a town of
Nōricum, i, N, the country
 between the Adriatic and the
 Danube.
nosco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, *find out; perf., know*.
noster, tra, **trum**, *our*.
nōta, ae, F., *mark*.
nōtus, i, M., *south wind*.
nōvem, *nine*.
nōverca, ae, F., *step-mother*.
nōvus, a, um, *new*; **nōvae**
res (pl.), *revolution*.
nox, noctis, F., *night*.
noxā, ae, F., *harm*.
noxius, a, um, *harmful*.
nūbo, ēre, psi, **ptum**, *cover; marry* (i.e., wear the veil, followed by dat.).

nūdus, a, um, *naked, exposed*.
nullus, a, um (g. ius), *no, none*.
num (interrog.), *whether*.
nūmero, āre, *count*.
nūmerus, i, M., *number*.
nummus, i, M., *penny, coin*.
nuncio (or -tio), āre, *announce*.
nuncius, i, M., *messenger*.
nūpēr, *lately, just now*.
nūrus, ūs, F., *daughter-in-law*.
ob, prep. (acc.), *on account of*.
obaerātus, i, M., *debtor*.
ob-jicio (jācio), *cast in the way*.
oblīno, ēre, lēvi, **lītum**, *be-smear*.
oblīviscor, i, **oblītus**, *forget*.
obsēro, āre, *beseech*.
obses, īdis, M., *hostage*.
ob-sto, *withstand*.
obstringo, ēre, **strinxī**, **strīctum**, *bind*.
ob-tīneo (tēneo), *hold fast*.
occāsus, ūs, M., *setting*.
oc-cīdo (caedo), *kill*.
oc-cīdo (cādo), *fall, set*.
occo, āre, *cut, harrow*.
occulto, āre, *hide*.
occūpo, āre, *seize*.
ōceānus, i, M., *ocean*.
Ocēlum, i, a town of Piedmont, near Turin.
octō, *eight*.
octōdēcim, *eighteen*.
octōgintā, *eighty*.
ōculus, i, M., *eye*.
ōdor, ōris, M., *smell*.
offensio, ōnis, F., *offence*.
offīcium, i, N., *duty*.
ōlim, adv., *of old, ever*.
omnino, adv., *altogether, at all*.
omnis, e, *all, every*.
ōpērio, īre, ui, **ertum**, *cover, wrap*.
ōpes, F. (pl.), *wealth, resources*.

oportet (impers., § 39, 1), *it is right, or must be.*

opprior, iri, ertus, i, wait for.

oppidum, i, N., town.

opprobrium, i, N., disgrace.

oppugno, āre, assault.

ōpūs, ōris, N., work, need.

ōrātio, ōnis, F., plea, speech.

Orgētōrix, Igis, leader of the Helvetian conspiracy, B.C. 60.

ōriens, tis, rising, east; from

ōrior, iri, ortus, rise, begin.

ōro, āre, pray, entreat.

ortus, ūs, M., rising.

ōs, ōris, N., mouth.

ōs, ossis, N., bone.

ostendo, ēre, di, sum or tum, show.

ōtium, i, N., ease, idleness.

ōvīle, is, N., sheep-fold.

ōvis, is, M. F., sheep.

P. Publius, a Roman prænomen.

pābūlātio, ōnis, F., foraging.

pābūlum, i, N., fodder.

pāco, āre, reduce to quiet.

paenē, almost.

pāgus, i, M., district, canton.

pālūs, ūdis, F., marsh.

pālus, i, M., stake.

pando, ēre, di, sum, spread, open.

pār, pāris; pl., es, ia, equal, right.

pārātus, ready.

pārens, tis, parent.

pāreo, ēre, ui (w. dat.), ap-pear, obey.

pārio, ēre, pēpēri, partum, bring forth.

pāro, āre, make ready, prepare.

pars, partis, F., part, direc-tion.

parvūlus, dim. of

parvus, a, um, little,

passivē, adv., passively.

passus, ūs, M., pace (about 5 feet); mille passuum, a mile.

pastor, ōris, shepherd.

pastus, a, um, having fed.

pāteo, ēre, ui, lie open, extend.

pāter, tris, M., father.

pātor, i, passus, suffer, per-mit.

patro, āre, commit.

patruēlis, cousin.

patruus, i, uncle.

pauci, ae, a, pl., few.

pauper, ōris, poor.

pāvor, ōris, N., fear.

pax, pācis, F., peace.

peccātum, i, N., sin.

pecco, āre, sin, offend.

pēlāgus, i, N., sea.

pellis, is, F., skin, hide.

pello, ēre, pēpūli, pulsum, drive, rout.

pendeo, ēre, pēpendi, pen-sum (neut.), hang.

pendo, ēre, pēpendi, pensum (act.), hang, weigh, pay.

pēnetro, āre, pierce, pass through.

per, prep. (acc.), through.

per-do, lose, ruin, destroy.

per-dūco, lead through, per-suade.

pērfācilis, e, very easy.

per-fēro, carry through, an-nounce, endure.

per-fīcio (fācio), accomplish.

perfidus, a, um, treacherous.

perfidus, a, um, thoroughly faithful.

perfringo, ēre, frēgi, fractum, break to pieces.

perfūga, ae, M., deserter.

perfūgio, ēre, fūgi, fugitum, escape, desert.

pēricūlum, i, N., danger.

pēritus, a, um, skilled.

per-mōveo, move, excite.

pernīcies, ēi, F., damage, ruin.

perpauci, ae, a, pl., very few.

perrumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, break through.

per-sēquor, follow close.

persēvēro, āre, persist.

permulti, æ, a, vix many.

persolvo, ěre, solvi, sölū-
tum, *pay*; **poenam**, *suffer*
punishment.

persuadeo, ěre, si, sum, *per-*
*sua*de. *persuade.*

perterreo, *frighten thoroughly.*

per-tineo (tĕneo), *tend, extend.*

per-vĕnio, *arrive.* [(no sup.)

pēs, pĕdis, M., *foot.*

pĕto, ěre, ivi, itum, *seek.*

phālanx, ngis, F., *solid square*
(of troops).

piĕtas, ātis, F., *piety.*

pīla, ae, F., *ball.*

pīla, ae, F., *pillar.*

pīlum, i, N., *heavy javelin.*

pinguis, e, *fat.*

piscis, is, M., *fish.*

Piso, ōnis, L. and M., cons-
uls, B.C. 56 and 60.

plāceo, ěre (dat.), *please.*

plācīdus, a, um, *calm.*

plānities, ēi, *level country.*

plebs, plēbis, F., *common*
people.

plecto, ěre, *punish.*

plēnus, a, um, *full.*

plūrimum, adv. (superl.), *very*
much, commonly.

plūs, adj. or adv. (compar.),
more; plūres, *more, several.*

poena, ae, F., *penalty.*

polluc̄eor, ěri, cītus, *promise.*

pōmum, i, N., *apple.*

pondĕro, āre, *weigh.*

pondus, ěris, N., *weight.*

pōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsītum,
place, put; **castra**, *set or*
pitch camp.

pons, pontis, M., *bridge.*

pontus, i, M., *sea.*

pōpūlātio, ōnis, F., *ravaging.*

pōpūlor, āri (dep.), *ravage,*
devastate.

pōpūlus, i, M., *people.*

pōpūlus, i, F., *poplar.*

porto, āre, *carry.*

portōrium, i, N., *import-tax.*

posco, ěre, pōposci, poscī-
tum, *demand.*

positus, a, um (pōno), *situ-*
ated.

possessio, ōnis, F., *property.*
possum (§ 29, III.), *can, be*
able; **multum posse**, *to have*
great power.

post, prep. (acc.), *after.*

postea, adv., *afterwards.*

postĕrus, a, um (§ 17, III.),
next following.

postrīdiē, adv. (w. gen.), *next*
day.

pōtens, tis, *powerful.*

pōtentia, ae, F., or

pōtestas, ātis, F., *power.*

pōtior, iri, itus (w. gen. or
abl., § 54, III.), *get posses-*
sion of.

praebeo, ěre, ui, itum, *fur-*
nish.

praeceĕdo, ěre, cessi, cessum,
go before, excel.

praeceptum, i, N., *rule, pre-*
cept.

prae-cīpio (cāpio), *enjoin.*

praeclārus, a, um, *famous.*

prae-fĕro, *prefer.*

prae-ficio (fācio), *set in com-*
mand (acc. and dat.).

prae-mitto, *send in advance.*

praeopto, āre, *choose, prefer.*

praesens, tis (part.), *present.*

praesertim, *especially.*

praesīdium, i, N., *garrison,*
guard.

praesto, stāre, stīti, stītum,
excel, furnish.

praestōlor, ari, *wait for.*

prae-sum (w. dat.), *have the*
charge of.

praeter, prep. (acc.), **praeter-**
quam, adv., *besides.*

praeter-eo, *pass by.*

praeterīta (pl.), N., *past, fore-*
gone.

praetor, ōris, M., **praetor**
(next in rank to consul).

prāvus, a, um, *wicked.*

prehendo (prendo), ěre, di,
sum, *take hold.*

prēmo, ēre, *ssi, ssum, press.*
 prētium, *i, N., price.*
 prex, prēcīs, *F., entreaty.*
 pridī, *adv. (w. gen.), the day before.*
 primus, *a, um (superl., § 17, III.), first; agmen, front.*
 princeps, cīpis, *M., chief.*
 principātus, ūs, *M., principedom, sovereignty.*
 principium, *i, N., beginning.*
 prior, *us, former.*
 prius, *a, um, former, previous.*
 prius . . . quam, *conj., before (§ 56, III.).*
 privātum, *adv., in private.*
 privātus, *a, um, private.*
 pro, *prep. (abl.), before, for, instead of, considering.*
 prōbitas, ātis, *F., honesty.*
 prōbo, āre, *prove.*
 prōbus, *a, um, good, upright.*
 Proculus, *C. Valērius, Roman governor of the province of Gaul.*
 prōcūl, *adv., far off.*
 prōdo, *deliver over, betray.*
 proelium, *i, N., battle.*
 prōfectio, ōnis, *F., setting-forth.*
 prōficio, *advance, carry forward.*
 prōficiſcor, *i, fectus, set forth, march.*
 prōfundus, *a, um, deep.*
 pro-hībeo (hābeo), *prevent, forbid.*
 prō-ſicio (jācio), *cast forth.*
 prō-mitto, *promise.*
 prōpē, *ius, proximē (prep., acc., § 17, III.), near.*
 prōpello, ēre, pūli, *pulsum, drive forward, repel.*
 prōpinquus, *a, um, near, kindred.*
 prō-pōno, *set forth (trans.).*
 propriē, *adv., properly.*
 propter, *prep. (acc.), on account of.*

propterea, *adv., for this reason; quod, because.*
 prōra, *ae, prow.*
 prōruptus, *a, um, bursting forth.*
 prospicio, ēre, exi, *ectum, look out, provide.*
 prō-sum (§ 29, IV.), *help.*
 prō-tēro, *trample.*
 prōvincia, *ae, F., province.*
 proximē, *next, just before.*
 proximus, *a, um (superl. § 17, III.), next.*
 publicus, *a, um, public.*
 puella, *ae, F., girl.*
 puer, puēri, *M., boy.*
 pugna, *ae, F., fight, battle.*
 pugno, āre, *to fight.*
 puppis, *is, F., stern (of ship).*
 purgo, āre, *excuse.*
 pūto, āre, *think, suppose.*
 Pyrēnaeus, *a, um, Pyrenean.*
 quā, *where (by what way).*
 quadrāgintā, *forty.*
 quadringenti, *ae, a, four hundred.*
 quaero, ēre, sivi, sītum (comp. quīr-), *seek.*
 quālis, *e, of what sort (correl. of tālis).*
 quam, *adv., than, how, as, (with superl., § 17, v. 5).*
 quantus, *a, um, how, or as great (§ 22, 1).*
 quārē, *adv., why.*
 quartus, *a, um, fourth.*
 quattuor, *four.*
 -que (enclitic), *and.*
 quēror, *i, questus, complain.*
 qui, quae, quod, *who, which.*
 quin, *but that, nay.*
 quīndēcim, *fifteen.*
 quingenti, *ae, a, five hundred.*
 quīni (distrib.), *by fives.*
 quinque, *five.*
 quintus, *a, um, fifth.*
 quis, quae, quid (interrog), *who, what (§ 21, III.).*
 quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, *(indef., § 21, III.), any.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque
(indef.), *each*.

quo, adv., *whither*.

quo (abl. of quod), *whereby*;
= ut eo (with compar., § 64,
II.), *in order that*; quo mī-
nus (§ 65, III.), *lest*; quo
mīnus . . . eo māgis, *the
less . . . the more*.

quod, conj., *because*; quod si,
but if.

quōque, *also*.

quōtidīanus, a, um, *daily*.

quōtidīē, adv., *every day*.

quum = cum, conj., *when*,
since, though.

rāpīna, ae, f., *pillage, rapine*.

rātio, ōnis, f., *reason, account*.

rātis, is, f., *raft*.

Raurāci, ōrum, a Gallic tribe
on the upper Rhine.

rēcens, tis, adj., *recent*.

rē-cipio (cāpio), *take back*;
se, retreat.

reclāmo, āre, *cry out against*.

reclūdo, ēre, di, sum, *lay
open*.

rectus, a, um, *straight, right*.

rēd-eo (§ 33, III.), *return*.

rēd-īmo (ēmo), *buy up, hire*.

rēdintēgro, *renew*.

rēditio, ōnis, f., *return*.

re-dūco, *bring back*.

rē-fēro, *relate, bring back*.

rēfert, it concerns (§ 50, IV. 4).

regnum, i, n., *royal power*.

rēgio, ōnis, f., *region*.

rēgo, ere, xi, ctum, *rule*.

rē-jicio (jācio), *throw back*.

rēlinquo, ēre, liqui, lictum,
leave, quit.

rēliquus, a, um, *remaining*,
rest of (§ 47, VIII.).

relligio, ōnis, f., *religion*.

rēmīniscor, i, *recollect*.

rē-mōveo, *back, or put aside*.

rēnuntio, āre, *bring word*.

reor, rēri, rātus, *think*.

rēpello, ēre, pūli, pulsum,
drive back.

rēpentinus, a, um, *sudden*.

rēpērio, ire, pēri, pertum,
find.

rē-pēto, *seek again*.

rē-prehendo, *blame*.

rēpugno, āre, *resist*.

rēs, rēi, f., *thing*.

rescindo, ēre, scīdi, sciassum,
cut down.

rescisco, ēre, scīvi, scītum
(incept., § 36, I.), *find out*.

rēsisto, ēre, stīti, *resist* (with
dat.).

respublica (§ 14, II. 2), f.,
commonwealth.

respondeo, ēre, di, sum, *re-
ply*.

responsum, i, n., *answer*.

re-stītuo (stātuo), *restore*.

rēte, is, n., *net*.

rē-tīneo (tēneo), *hold back*.

reus, a, um, *arraigned*.

rēverto, ēre, ti, sum, and

rēvertor, i, sus (refl. § 23, 3),
return.

rex, rēgis, m., *king*.

Rhēnus, i, m., *the Rhine*.

Rhōdānus, i, m., *the Rhone*.

rīdeo, ēre, si, sum, *laugh*
(at).

rīma, ae, *crack*.

rīpa, ae, f., *river-bank*.

rīxor, āri, *quarrel*.

rōgo, āre (2 acc., § 52, III.),
ask, beg.

Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman*.

rōta, ae, f., *wheel*.

rōtundus, a, um, *round*.

rūbeo, ēre, ui, *be red, blush*.

ruo, ēre, *rush*.

rursus, adv., *back, again*.

rusticus, a, um, *rustic*.

saepē, ius, issimē, *often*.

sāgax, ācis, *sagacious*.

sāgittifer, fēri, m., *archer*.

sālus, ūtis, f., *safety*.

sanguis, inis, m., *blood*.

Santōnes, um, or Santōni,
ōrum, a tribe north of the
Garonne (*Saintonge*).

sānus, a, um, *sound*.
sāpio, ēre, īvi, *taste* (N.), *be wise*.
sarcīna, ae, F., *burden, baggage*.
sartor, ōris, M., *tailor*.
sātis, adv., *enough* (w. gen.); **sātius**, *better*.
sātis-fācio, *satisfy*. (§ 37, VII).
saxum, i, N., *rock*.
scōlus, ēris, N., *crime, guilt*.
scio, īre, scīvi, scītum, *know*.
scorpio, ōnis (or us, i), M., *scorpion*.
sculpo, ēre, psi, ptum, *carve, engrave*.
scūtum, i, N., *shield*.
sē (sui), *self* (sing. or plur.).
sēcrēto, adv., *secretly, privately*.
sēcundus, a, um (sēquor), *second, favorable*.
sēcūrus, a, um, *free from care*.
sēd, conj., *but*.
sēdēcim, *sixteen*.
sēdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *sit*.
sēdes, is, F., *seat*.
sēditiōsus, a, um, *turbulent, factious*.
Sēgūsiāni, ōrum, a tribe in district of Lugdunum (*Lyons*).
sēmentis, is, F., *sowing*.
sēnātus, ūs, M., *senate*.
sēnecta, ae, F., *old age*.
sēnex, sēnis, M., *old man* (compar. sēnior, § 17, III).
sēni (distrib.), *by sizes; often, six*.
sentio, īre, sensi, sensum, *perceive by the senses, think*.
sēpārātīm, *separately*.
sēpio, īre, *fence*.
septemtrio, ōnis (oftener pl.), *north*.
septīmus, a, um, *seventh*.
sēpultūra, ae, F., *burial*.
Sēquāna, ae, M., *the river Seine*.
Sēquānus, a, um, *belonging to the country near the*

sources of the Seine (Sequanian).
sēquor, i, sēcūtus, *follow*.
sēro, adv., *too late*.
sērus, a, um, *late*.
servitūdo, īnis, F., *slavery*.
servo, āre, *keep, save*.
servus, i, M., *slave*.
seu = *sive*, conj., *whether, or*.
sī, conj., *if*.
sīdo, ēre, sīdi, *settle, abide*.
sīdus, ēris, N., *star*.
signo, āre, *to mark*.
signum, i, N., *mark, ensign*.
sileo, ēre, ui, *be silent*.
sīlva, ae, F., *wood, forest*.
sīmul, *as soon as, at once*.
sīmūlo, āre, *pretend*.
sīn, *but if; sīne, without*.
sīngūlus, a, um, *single*.
sīno, ēre, sīvi, *permit*.
sinistra, ae, F., *left hand*.
sive, *sive, whether . . . or*.
sōcer, ēri, M., *father-in-law*.
sōcius, a, um, *allied; pl., allies*.
socrus, ūs, F., *mother-in-law*.
sōdālis, is, M., *companion*.
sōl, sōlis, M., *sun*.
sōlum, i, N., *soil, earth*.
sōlum, adv., *only; N. of*
sōlus, a, um, g., ius, *alone*.
solvo, ēre, vi, ūtum, *loosen*.
sōno, āre, ui, ītum, *sound*.
sons, tis, *guilty*.
sōror, ōris, F., *sister*.
sortior, īri, *allot*.
spātium, i, N., *space* (time or place).
specto, āre, *look at, front*.
sperno, ēre, sprēvi, sprētum, *despise*.
spēro, āre, *hope*.
spēs, spēi, F., *hope*.
sphaera, ae, F., *ball*.
spondeo, ēre, spōpondi, *sponsum, vouch*.
spontē (abl., § 14, I. 3), *good will, accord*.
spūmo, āre, *foam*.

stagno, āre, *stagnate*.
 stātio, ōnis, f., *station*.
 stātuo, ēre, ui, ūtum (comp. stituo), *resolve, decide*.
 sterno, ēre, strāvi, strātum, *prostrate, overthrow*.
 sto, āre, stēti, stātum (comp. stiti), *stand*.
 stūdeo, ēre, ui (w. dat.), *be eager for*.
 stūdium, i, n., *zeal, interest*.
 stultus, a, um, *foolish*.
 suāvis, e, *sweet*.
 sūb, prep. (acc., abl.), *under, near*.
 sub-dūco, *withdraw*.
 sūb-eo, *undergo, enter*.
 sub-jicio (jācio), *cast under, subdue*.
 sublātus, part., (tollo), *uplifted*.
 sublēvo, āre, *raise, assist*.
 submergo, ēre, si, sum, *submerge, plunge*.
 sub-mōveo, *remove*.
 subsisto, ēre, stiti, *make a stand*.
 sub-sum, *be at hand*.
 subveho, ēre, vexti, vectum, *fetch, bring up*.
 succēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *come close after*.
 sui (g.), sibi, se (refl., § 19, II.), *self*.
 sum, esse, fui, *be* (§ 29).
 summus, a, um (superl., § 17, III.), *highest; top of* (§ 47, VIII.); f., *the whole amount*.
 sūmo, ēre, sumpsi, sumptum, *take, spend*.
 sumptus, ūs, m., *cost, expense*.
 supērior (compar., § 17, III.), *higher, former*.
 supēro, āre, *surpass, overcome*.
 sūper-sum, *remain, survive*.
 sup-pēto, *be at hand, suffice*.
 suppliciter, *suppliantly*.
 supplioium, i, n., *punishment*.
 suprā, prep. (acc.), adv., *above*.
 surgo, ēre, surrexi, surrectum, *rise*

sus-cīpio (cāpio), *undertake*.
 suspicio, ōnis, f., *distrust*.
 sus-tīneo (tēneo), *sustain*.
 suus, poss. adj., *his own* (see § 47, III.).
 tabula, ae, f., *register*.
 tāceo, ēre, tācui, *be silent*.
 tam, adv., *so, so much* (correl. quam).
 tāmēn, *yet, nevertheless*.
 tandem, *at length*.
 tantus, a, um, *so great* (correl. quantus).
 taurus, i, m., *bull*.
 tēlum, i, n., *missile, weapon*.
 tempērantia, ae, f., *moderation*.
 tempēro, āre, *restrain, refrain*.
 templum, i, n., *temple*.
 tempūs, ōris, n., *time*.
 tendo, ēre, tētendi, tensum, *strive, stretch*.
 tēneo, ēre, ui, tentum, *hold*.
 tento, āre, try, *attack*.
 tēnuis, e, *slender*.
 tērea, ētis, *rounded*.
 tergum, i, n., *back*.
 tergus, ōris, n., *back, hide*.
 tēro, ēre, trīvi, trītum, *rub, bruise*.
 tertius, a, um, *third*.
 testis, is, m., *witness*.
 Tigurinus, a, um, *belonging to the district near Zurich*.
 timeo, ēre, ui, *fear*.
 timor, ōris, m., *fear*.
 tōlēro, āre, *endure*.
 tollo, ēre, sustūli, sublātum, *lift, take away*.
 Tōlōsātes, ium, *inhabitants of Tolōsa (Toulouse)*.
 tonsor, ōris, m., *hair-dresser*.
 torqueo, ēre, si, tum, *twist*.
 tōtus, a, um, g., ius, *whole*.
 trā-do, *give over, betray*.
 trā-dūco, *lead across*.
 trāgūla, ae, f., *dart*.
 tranquillus, a, um, *quiet*.

trans, prep. (acc.), *across*.
 trans-dūco = tradūco.
 trans-eo, *go across*. [*transfix*.
 transfigo, ēre, fixi, fixum.
 transgredior, i, gressus, *cross*.
 tremūlus, a, um, *trembling*.
 trēpido, āre, *tremble*.
 tres, tria, *three*.
 tribūlum, i, n., *drag* (for
 threshing).
 tribūlus, i, m., *thistle*.
 tribuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, *grant*.
 triduum, i, n., *three days*.
 triplex, icis, *threefold*.
 tristis, e, *sad, gloomy*.
 Tulingi, ōrum, a tribe on the
 upper Rhine.
 tum, *then*.
 tūmīdus, a, um, *swelling*.
 tundo, ēre, tūtūdi, tusum, *beat*.
 turbo, inis, m., *whirlwind*,
tempest.
 turpo, āre, defile.
 tūtus, a, um, *safe*.
 ūbi, conj., *when, where*.
 ullus, a, um, g., ius, *any*.
 ulciscor, i, ultus, *avenge*,
punish.
 ultērior, us (comp., § 17, III.),
on the farther side.
 ultīmus, a, um, *furthest, last*.
 ultro, *willingly*.
 ulva, ae, f., *sedge*.
 ūnā, adv., *together*.
 unda, ae, f., *wave*.
 unde, *whence*; undīque, *from*
or on all sides.
 ungūla, ae, f., *hoof*.
 unguis, is, m., *claw*.
 ūnus, a, um, g., ius, *one*.
 unusquisque, *every one*.
 urbs, urbis, f., *city*.
 ursa, ae, f., *bear* (the north).
 usus, ūs, m., *use*.
 ūt, ūti, conj. (w. indic.), *when*,
as; (w. subj.), *that*.
 ūter, tra, trum, g., ius, *which*
(of two).
 ūterque, *both*.

ūtor, i, ūsus, *employ, use*.
 uxor, ōris, f., *wife*.
 vāco, āre, *be empty, or at*
leisure.
 vādum, i, n., *or*.
 vādus, i, m., *ford*.
 vāgor (dep.), *wander, roam*.
 vāleo, ēre, ui, *be strong, have*
influence.
 vallo, āre, *entrench*.
 vallum, i, n., *rampart*.
 vās, vādis, n., *surety*.
 vās, vāsīs, n. (pl., a, ōrum),
vessel, vase.
 vasto, āre, *ravage, lay waste*.
 vēl, conj., *either, or*.
 vēlum, i, n., *veil, sail*.
 vēna, ae, f., *vein*.
 vēn-eo (neut.), *sell, be sold*.
 vēnio, ire, vēni, ventum,
come.
 ventus, i, m., *wind*.
 vēs, vēris, n., *spring*.
 Verbigenus, i, an Helvetian
 canton (Soleure).
 verbum, i, n., *word*.
 vēreor, ēri, ūtus, *fear*.
 vergo, ēre, *incline, extend*.
 Vergōbrētus, i, chief magis-
 tracy of the Ædui (a Celtic
 word = *doer of justice*).
 verno, āre, *be verdant*.
 vērō, adv., *in truth*; conj., *but*.
 Verudoctus, i, an Helvetian
 envoy.
 vērum, conj., *but*.
 vērus, adj., *true*.
 vespēr, ēri, m., *evening*.
 vētērānus, a, um, *veteran*.
 vēto, āre, ui, ūtum, *forbid*.
 vētūs, ūris, *old, ancient*.
 vexo, āre, *harass, distress*.
 via, ae, f., *way, road*.
 victōria, ae, f., *victory*.
 vīcus, i, n., *village, hamlet*.
 vīdeo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *see*;
pass., seem, appear.
 vīgīlia, ae, f., *watch of the*
night.

viginti, *twenty*.
vīlis, *e*, *cheap*.
vinco, *ēre*, **vici**, **viotum**, *conquer*.
vincūlum, *i*, *N.*, *bond, fetter*.
viōlo, *āre*, *violate, ravage*.
vīreo, *ēre*, *be strong*.
virgo, *īnis*, *F.*, *virgin*.
virtūs, *ūtis*, *F.*, *valor, manhood, virtue*.
vis, **vīm**, **vi**, *F.*, *force*; *pl.*, *vīres*, *strength*.
vīta, *ae*, *F.*, *life*.
vītium, *i*, *N.*, *fault, vice*.
vīto, *āre*, *shun, avoid*.
vitricus, *i*, *M.*, *step-father*.

vīvo, *ēre*, **xi**, **ctum**, *live*.
vix, *scarcely, hardly*.
Vōcontii, **ōrum**, *a Gallic tribe near the lower Rhone*.
vōlo, **velle**, **vōlui** (§ 37, 1.), *wish*.
vōlūbilis, *e*, *hurrying, whirling*.
vōluntas, *ātis*, *F.*, *will, goodwill*.
vōluptas, *ātis*, *F.*, *pleasure*.
vōmēr, *ēris*, *M.*, *ploughshare*.
vulgus, *i*, *N.*, *common people*.
vulnēro, *āre*, *wound*.
vulnūs, *ēris*, *N.*, *wound*.
vulpēcūla, *ae*, *F.*, *dim. of vulpes*, *is*, *F.*, *fox*.

destituo, *ēre*, **ui**, **ūtum**, *desert*.
Gallicus, *a*, *um*, *Gallic*.
ōdi, **ōsus**, *hate*.
offendo, *ēre*, **di**, **sum**, *offend*.
postquam, *conj.*, *after, when*.

præsentia, *ae*, *F.*, *presence*.
publicē, *adv.*, *at public expense by public authority*.
semper, *adv.*, *always*.
vectīgal, *ālīs*, *N.*, *revenue, tax*.

II. ENGLISH AND LATIN.

This Vocabulary does not contain Proper Names, — for which, see the preceding.

For numerals not given here, see § 18.

Able, potens; be able, possum.
Absent, absens; be absent, absum.
Abundance, copia.
Acceptable, acceptus.
Accident, casus.
Accomplish, conficio, perficio.
Account, ratio; on account of, ob, propter.
Accuse, accuso.
Across, trans.
Advice, consilium, auctoritas.
Affect, afficio.
Aid, auxilium; (verb), sublevo.
All (every), omnis; (whole), totus.
Ambassador, legatus.
Among, inter.
Ancient, antiquus, vetus.
Announce, nuntio, renuntio.
Another, alius.
Any, quisquam, omnis.
Apiece (distrib. numeral).
Army, exercitus.
Arrival, adventus.
Ask, quaero, rogo.
Assail, assault, oppugno.
Assemble, convenio.
Assistance, auxilium.
Arise, orior.
Arrive, pervenio.
Attack, impetus; (verb), oppugno, aggredior.
Attempt, conatus; (verb), conor.
Authority, auctoritas, imperium.
Auxiliaries, auxilia.

Away from, a, ab.
Bank (of river), ripa.
Battle, proelium.
Be, sum; be absent, absum; be present, adsum; be wanting, desum.
Beat, pello.
Become, fio.
Before, prep., ante; adv., antea.
Beginning, initium.
Besiege, obsideo, oppugno.
Between, inter.
Beyond, trans.
Boast, glorior.
Boat, linter.
Bound, finis; (verb), contineo.
Brave, fortis.
Bravery, fortitudo.
Breadth, latitudo.
Break through, perrumpo.
Bridge, pons.
Broad, latus.
Building, aedificium.
Burn, cremo, exuro.
By, a, ab; by twos, bini (distrib.).
Call, voco, appello; call together, convoco.
Camp, castra.
Can, possum.
Carry on, gero.
Cause, causa.
Certain (a), quidam.
Chain, vinculum.
Chief, princeps.
Choose (elect), creo.
Citizen, civis.

City, urbs.
Collect, cogo.
Come, venio.
Command, imperium ; (verb),
impero, jubeo.
Commit, mando.
Compel, cogo.
Concerning, de.
Condemn, damno.
Confirm, confirmare.
Conquered, devictus.
Consul, consul.
Consume, cremo.
Contend, contendo.
Continually, continenter.
Corn, frumentum.
Courage, fortitudo.
Cross, transeo, transgredior.
Custom, mos.

Daily, adj., quotidianus ; adv.,
quotidie.
Danger, periculum.
Daughter, filia.
Day, dies.
Death, mors.
Deep, altus. Defeat, vinco.
Depart, abeo.
Departure, profectio.
Depth, altitudo.
Design, consilium.
Desire, cupiditas.
Desirous, cupidus.
Destroy (by fire), cremo.
Die, morior.
Differ, differo.
Difficult, difficilis.
Disaster, incommodum.
Distant, absens, longinquus.
Divide, divido.
Do, facio.
Drive, pello.

Easy, facilis.
Embassy, legatio.
Enemy, hostis.
Especially, maxime.
Example, exemplum.
Excel, praesto, praeoedo.
Excite, permoveo.

Extend, pertineo.
Extreme, extremus.
Faith, fides.
Far, longe.
Farther, adv., longius ; adj.,
ulterior.
Farthest, adj., ultimus.
Father, pater.
Fidelity, fides.
Field, ager.
Fifth, quintus.
Fight, pugno.
Find, reperio.
Fire, ignis.
Firm, firmus.
Flee, fugio.
Flight, fuga ; take flight, fu-
gam capio.
Flow, fluo.
Follow, sequor, insequor.
Force, vis.
Forces, copiae.
Ford, vadum, vadus.
Fortification, munitio.
Fortify, munio, communio.
Fourth, quartus.
Friend, friendly, amicus.
Friendship, amicitia.
From (away), a, ab ; (out), e, ex.
Further, adj., ulterior ; adv.,
longius.

General, dux.
Get (possession of), potior.
Give, do.
Glory, gloria.
Go, eo ; forth, exeo ; to and
fro, commeo.
God, deus.
Good, bonus.
Great, magnus ; comp., major ;
superl., maximus.
Grief, dolor.

Harass, vexo.
Hasten, propero, maturo.
Hastily, mature, celeriter.
Height, altitudo.
Help. N., auxilium ; (verb),
juvo.

High, altus.
Hither, adj., citerior; adv., huc.
Hold, habeo.
Home, domus.
Hope, spes.
Hostage, obses.

Ides, idus (pl.).
Immortal, immortalis.
In, in (abl.).
Incredible, incredibilis.
Influence, gratia, auctoritas;
 (verb), permoveo.
Inform, certiorum facio.
Inhabit, incolo.
Injury, injuria.
Intend (fut. participle).
Into, in (acc.).

Join, conjungo.
Journey, iter.

Kalends, kalendae.
Kingdom, regnum.

Lake, lacus.
Language, lingua.
Large, magnus.
Law, lex.
Lay waste, populor; siege,
 oppugno.
Leader, dux.
Leave, relinquo.
Least, adj., minimus; adv.,
 minime.
Legion, legio.
Less, adj., minor; adv., mi-
 nus.
Lie open, pateo.
Limit, finis.
Lofty, altus.
Long, longus.
Look, specto.
Lower, inferior.

Make, facio; (elect), creo.
Man, homo, vir.
Many, multi.
March, iter; (verb), contendo,
 proficiscor.

Marriage, matrimonium.
Means, opes; by means of, per.
Meet, convenio.
Memory, memoria.
Merchant, mercator.
Middle (of), medius.
Mile, mille passuum.
Mind, animus.
Mountain, mons.
Multitude, multitudo.
Move, moveo, permoveo.

Narrow-pass, angustiae.
Nature, natura.
Near, prope, ad.
New, novus.
Night, nox; by night, noctu.
No (adj.), nullus.
Noble, nobilis.
North, septemtrio (pl.).
Number, numerus.

Oath, jusjurandum.
Obtain, occupo; (by request),
 impetro.
Often, saepe.
Old, vetus.
On, in.
One, unus; one by one, sin-
 guli.
Order (verb), jubeo.
Other, alius; (of two), alter.
Our, noster; our men, nostri.
Out of, ex.
Outmost, extremus.
Outside of, extra.
Overhang, impendo.

Pace, passus.
Part, pars.
People, pōpulus; the common
 people, plebs.
Perceive, sentio.
Peril, periculum.
Permitted (it is), licet.
Persevere, persevero.
Persuade, persuadeo.
Place, locus.
Plan, consilium.
Pleasing, acceptus.

Pledge, fides.
Powerful, potens.
Prepare, paro.
Prepared, paratus.
Private, privatus.
Proceed, proficiscor.
Prohibit, prohibeo.
Proof, indicium.
Property (neut. pl. of poss.-adj.).
Province, provincia.
Possession, possessio ; get pos-
session of, potior.
Power, potentia, potestas.
Punishment, poena.
Purpose, consilium ; for the
purpose of, ad ; or causa, w.
gerund or gerundive.

Raft, ratis.
Ravage, populor.
Ready, paratus.
Reason, ratio, causa.
Receive, adscisco.
Remove, tollo.
Resort, commeo.
Rest of, reliquus.
Return, reditio ; (verb), redeo.
Rich, dives.
Rise, orior, nascor.
Rising, oriens.
River, flumen.
Road, via ; route, iter.
Royal power, regnum.

Same, idem.
Say, dico.
Scout, explorator.
See, video.
Seize, occupo.
Select, deligo.
Self (himself, &c.), sui.
Senate, senatus.
Separate, divido.
Set out, proficiscor.
Setting-out, profectio.
Ship, navis.
Side, latus.
Siege, obsessio.
Sight, conspectus.
Some, aliquis, nonnulli.

Soldier, miles.
Speak, loquor.
State, civitas.
Stream, flumen.
Strength, vires.
Subdue, supero, paco.
Suffer, patior.
Sun, sol.
Suspicion, suspicio.

Take, capio ; (possession of).
potior, occupo.
Tear, lacrima ; in tears, flens.
Temper, animus.
Territory, fines (pl.).
Testimony, indicium.
That, ille, is.
Thing, res.
Think, puto, cogito.
Third, tertius.
This, hic ; this side of, citra.
Thousand, mille.
Three, tres.
Through, per.
Time, tempus.
To, ad (or dative).
Tongue, lingua.
Top of, summus (adj.).
Touch, attingo.
Town, oppidum.
Troops, copiae.
Two days, biduum.

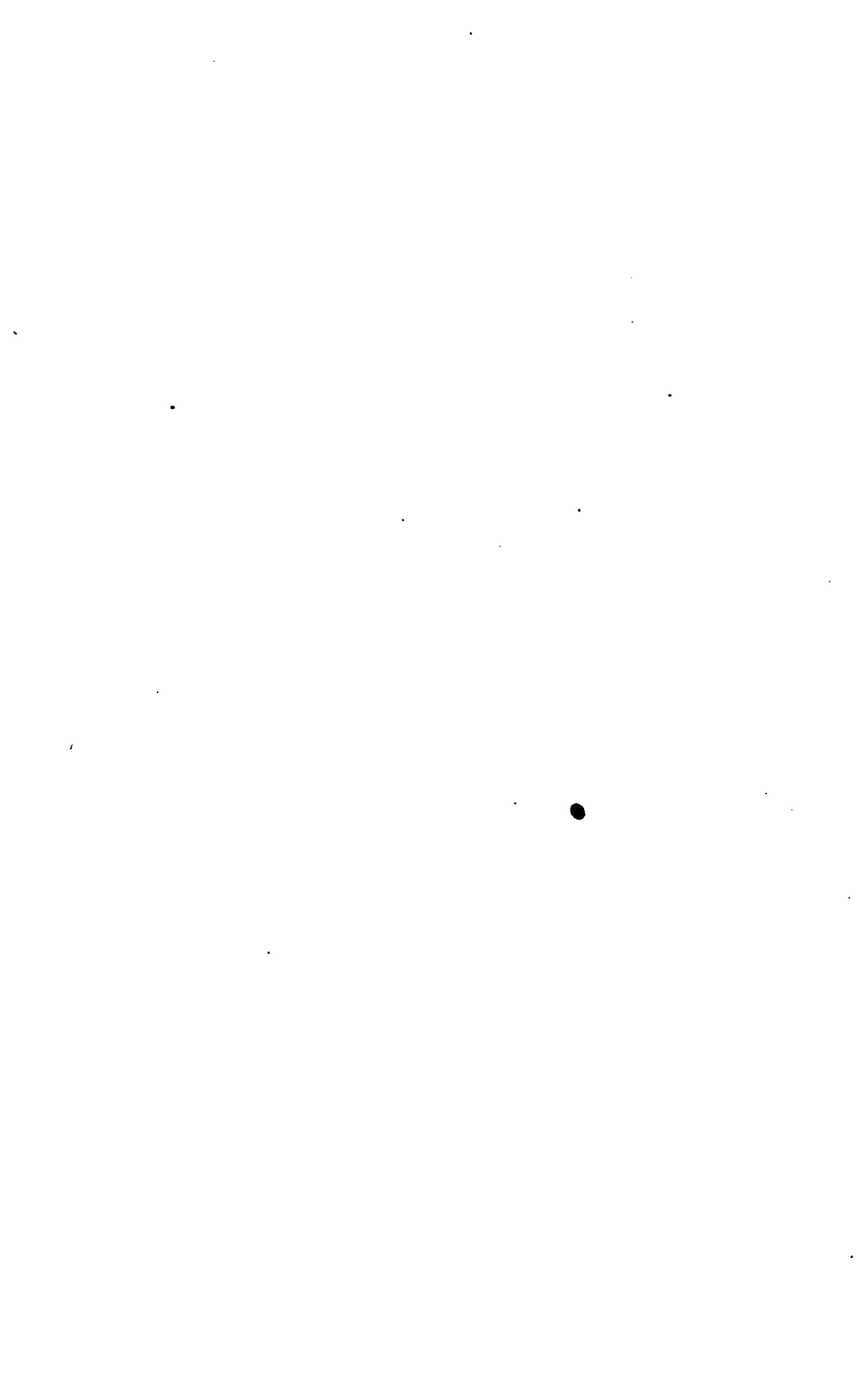
Unfriendly, inimicus.
Unwilling, invitus.
Upon, super, in.

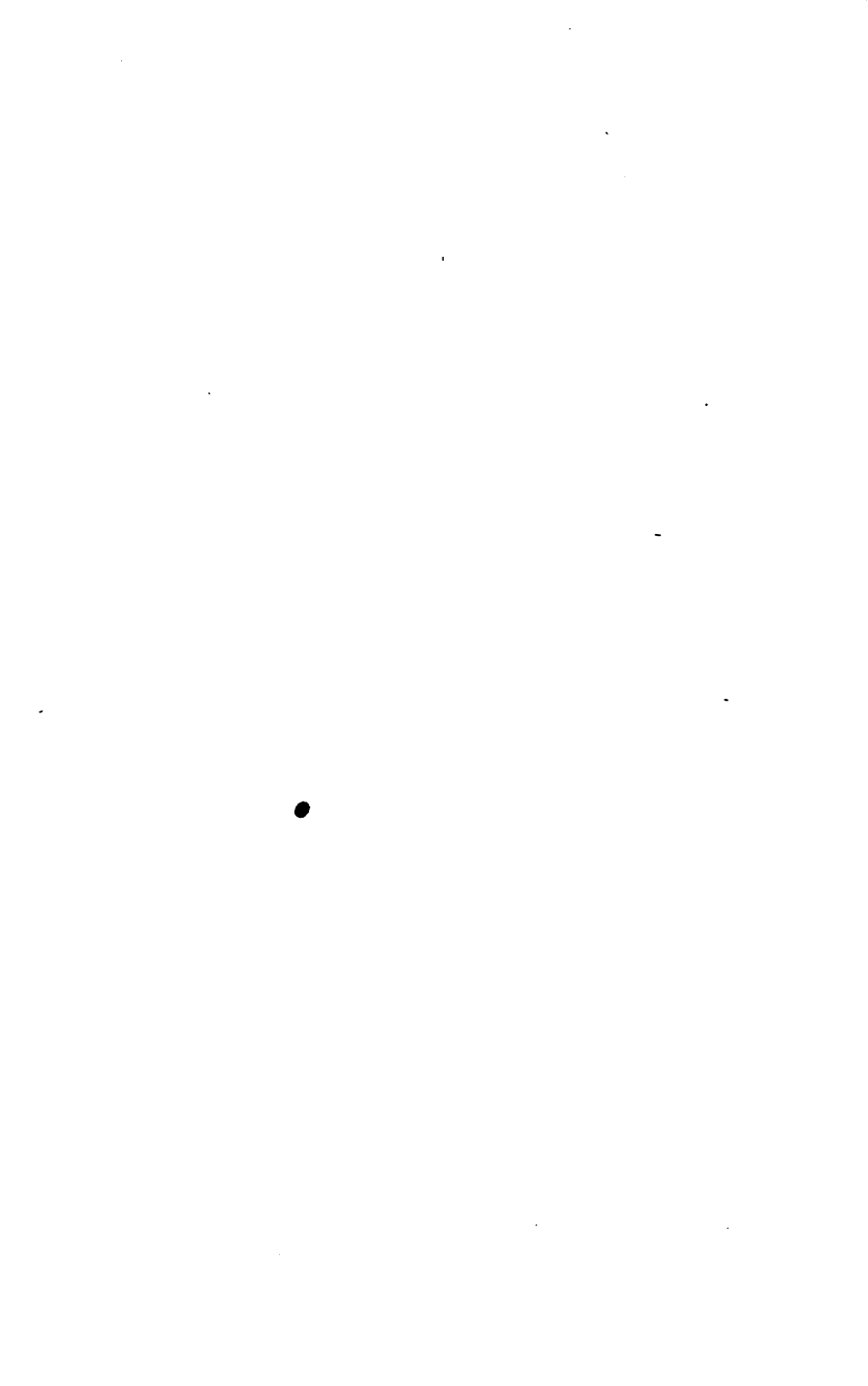
Valor, fortitudo, virtus.
Violence, vis.
Virtue, virtus.

Wage (war), gero.
Waggon, carrus.
Wanting (be), absum, de-
sum.
War, bellum.
We, nos.
West, occasus (solis).
When, ubi, cum.
Where, ubi ; (what way), qua.

Whole of, totus, omnis.
Who, which, qui, quae, quod.
Width, latitudo.
Winter, hiems ; (verb), hiemo.
Wish, volo.
With, cum.
Withdraw, se eripio.
Without, sine.

Word (to bring), nuntio.
Work, opus.
Wrong, injuria.
Year, annus.
You, vos.
Your, vester.





Announcements.

ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN SERIES.

These text-books have been prepared especially to meet the present conditions for admission to Harvard College. (See Catalogue.)

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR:** A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges, founded on Comparative Grammar. pp. 268.
2. **LATIN METHOD:** A Method of Instruction in Latin; being a Companion and Guide in the Study of Latin Grammar. With Elementary Instruction in Reading at Sight, Exercises in Translation and Writing, Notes, and Vocabulary. pp. 108. With Supplement (Outline of Syntax). 1875.
3. **LATIN COMPOSITION** (*In Preparation*), being a Sequel to the Method: To consist of two parts: the first containing Exercises on the Constructions of Syntax, with Vocabulary (translation into Latin for practice in Syntax, introductory to Composition proper); the second, Practice in Writing Latin, adapted to the use of advanced or college classes (free Composition, i. e. translation of continuous passages from English into Latin). The first part is expected to be ready for publication early in the summer.
4. **CÆSAR:** Cæsar's Gallic War, Four Books. With Copperplate Map of Gaul. (With or without a full Vocabulary by R. F. PENNELL, of Exeter Academy.) pp. 154.
5. **SALLUST:** The Conspiracy of Catiline as related by Sallust. pp. 82.
6. **CICERO:** Select Orations of Cicero chronologically arranged, covering the entire period of his public life. pp. 394.
This volume contains thirteen orations, giving to classes a considerable range of choice.
7. **CATO MAJOR:** Cicero *De Senectute*, a Dialogue on Old Age. pp. 57.
8. **OVID:** Selections from the Poems of Ovid, chiefly the *Metamorphoses*. With Index of Proper Names. pp. 283.
9. **VIRGIL:** Six Books of the *Æneid* and the *Bucolics*. With Introduction, Notes, and Grammatical References to Allen & Greenough's and Gildersleeve's Latin Grammars. The text is founded on that of Ribbeck, variations from that and from Heyne being given in the margin.

For No. 2 of the above may be substituted

LEIGHTON'S LATIN LESSONS, adapted to Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar, with enlarged Vocabulary by R. F. PENNELL (about 800 pp.); containing a large amount of elementary practice in reading and composition.

The following will be published in single volumes : —

1. Course No. I. Full Preparatory Course of Latin Prose (without Vocabulary), containing four books of *Cæsar's Gallic War*, *Sallust's Catiline*, eight *Orations of Cicero*, and the *Cato Major*.

2. Course No. II. Second Preparatory Course of Latin Prose (with Vocabulary), containing four books of *Cæsar's Gallic War* and eight *Orations of Cicero*.

N. B. — Course No. I. is identical with the First Course prescribed for admission to Harvard College. Course No. II. contains the usual amount required at other colleges.

REPRESENTATIVE AUTHORS. By H. H. MORGAN.

This is essentially a repertorium, and can be made equally useful as a work of reference and as a companion to any manual of literature, or as a guide in any course of reading. It presents the representative authors of England and America, — their mode of presenting their subjects, the literary forms which they employ, their representative works, their characterization by critics of established reputation. The classification is at once simple and exhaustive, and meets a want not hitherto provided for.

THE FIFTH, or HIGH SCHOOL MUSIC READER FOR MIXED VOICES. By JULIUS EICHBERG, General Supervisor of Musical Instruction of Boston Public Schools.

Containing a full Course of Advanced Solfegios for One and Two Voices, and a carefully selected number of easy *Four-Part Songs* taken from the works of the best composers. This work has been especially compiled to meet the growing wants of our High Schools for a higher grade of music than is contained in works now used in such schools.

N. B. — The Tenor Part in many of the songs may be either omitted or sung by the altos (boys).

IN PRESS.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE RHYTHMIC AND METRIC OF THE CLASSICAL LANGUAGES. By DR. J. H. HEINRICH SCHMIDT. To which will be added the Text of the Lyrical Parts of some of the more generally read of the Greek Dramas, with Rhythmical Schemes and Commentary. Edited from the German by JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, A. M., and C. H. RIEMENSCHNEIDER, Ph. D., Professor of the Ancient Languages in German Wallace College.

Dr. Schmidt's "*Leitfaden in der Rhythmik und Metrik der Classischen Sprachen*" is a compend of his larger work, brought out in four volumes, 8vo. in 1868-72, entitled "*Die Kunstformen der griechischen Poesie und ihre Bedeutung*," and is designed as a manual for classes in the Greek and Latin poets. The author has revised the present translation and made important additions. Many illustrations from English poets have been introduced, and the work has been otherwise adapted to the use of English-speaking students. With a full Index. (*Nearly Ready*.)

IN PREPARATION.

OUTLINES OF THE COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SANSKRIT, GREEK, AND LATIN, embracing in small compass the general principles of Etymology, with full references to authorities and larger works; designed as a text-book or for self-instruction. By J. B. GREENOUGH.

PLATO'S APOLOGY OF SOCRATES AND CRITO. Edited, for the Use of Schools, by JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, A. M.

The basis of this work will be the German edition of Dr. Christian Cron. (*Platons Vertheidigungsrede des Sokrates und Kriton. Fuenfte Auflage. Leipzig, Teubner, 1872*) To the matter contained in Dr. Cron's edition there will be added notes by

the Editor and from other sources, analyses, and extended references to Goodwin and Hadley. The book will be for the class-room, and all matter not of direct value to the student will be rigidly excluded. (*In Preparation.*)

FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. Prepared to accompany Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and designed as an Introduction to his Greek Reader. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, A. M., Tutor in Greek in Harvard College.

A series of eighty lessons with progressive Greek-English and English-Greek exercises. Followed by selected passages from the first two books of Xenophon's *Anabasis*, and vocabularies. (*In Preparation.*)

THE MEDEA OF EURIPIDES. Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by FREDERIC D. ALLEN, Ph. D., Professor in the University of Cincinnati.

NEW EDITION OF LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S ABRIDGED GREEK LEXICON. With an Appendix containing Proper and Geographical Names carefully prepared by J. M. WHARON.

SELECT ORATIONS OF LYSIAS.

HUDSON'S TEXT-BOOK OF POETRY. For use in schools and classes. Consisting of selections from Wordsworth, Coleridge, Burns, Beattie, Goldsmith, and Thomson.

CARPENTER'S INTRODUCTION TO ANGLO-SAXON. An Introduction to the study of the Anglo-Saxon Language, Comprising an Elementary Grammar, Selections for Reading with Notes, and a Vocabulary. By STEPHEN H. CARPENTER, Professor of Logic and English Literature in the University of Wisconsin, and Author of "English of the XIV. Century." pp. 212 1.00 1.25

Boston, June, 1875.

GINN BROTHERS,

Publishers,

4 Beacon Street, BOSTON.

Terms: Cash in Thirty Days. Wholesale and Retail Prices.

ENGLISH.

ARNOLD'S MANUAL of ENGLISH LITERATURE. Wholesale. Retail.
Historical and Critical. By THOMAS ARNOLD, M. A. \$ 2.00

CARPENTER'S INTRODUCTION TO ANGLO-SAXON. An Introduction to the study of the Anglo-Saxon Language, Comprising an Elementary Grammar, Selections for Reading with Notes, and a Vocabulary. By STEPHEN H. CARPENTER, Professor of Logic and English Literature in the University of Wisconsin, and Author of "English of the XIV. Century." pp. 212 1.00 1.25

CRAIK'S ENGLISH OF SHAKESPEARE. Illustrated in a Philological Commentary on his Julius Cæsar, by GEORGE L. CRAIK, Queen's College, Belfast. Edited by W. J. ROFFE, Cambridge. Cloth 1.40 1.75

ELEMENTS OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. An Introduction to the study of Grammar and Composition. By BERNARD BIGSBY, Univ. Oxon., Superintendent of Public Schools, Port Huron; Author of "The History of the English Language"40 .50

ENGLISH OF THE XIV. CENTURY. Illustrated by Notes, Grammatical and Etymological, on Chaucer's Prologue and Knight's Tale. Designed to serve as an Introduction to the Critical Study of English. By STEPHEN H. CARPENTER, A. M., Professor of Rhetoric and English Literature in the State University of Wisconsin 1.40 1.75

HUDSON'S FAMILY SHAKESPEARE: Plays selected and prepared, with Notes and Introductions, for Use in Families.

Volume I., containing As You Like It, The Merchant of Venice, Twelfth Night, First and Second of King Henry the Fourth, Julius Cæsar, and Hamlet.

Volume II., containing The Tempest, The Winter's Tale, King Henry the Fifth, King Richard the Third, King Lear, Macbeth, and Antony and Cleopatra.

Volume III., containing A Midsummer Night's Dream, Much Ado about Nothing, King Henry the Eighth, Romeo and Juliet, Cymbeline, Coriolanus, and Othello.

And Hudson's Life, Art, and Characters of Shakespeare. 2 vols.

5 vols. Cloth	8.00	10.00
Half morocco	12.00	15.00
Full calf	16.00	20.00

HUDSON'S LIFE, ART, AND CHARACTERS OF SHAKESPEARE. Including an Historical Sketch of the Origin and Growth of the Drama in England, with Studies in the Poet's Dramatic Architecture, Delineation of Character, Humor, Style, and Moral Spirit, also with Critical Discourses on the following plays, — A Midsummer Night's Dream, The Merchant of Venice, The Merry Wives of Windsor, Much Ado about Nothing, As You Like It, Twelfth Night, All's Well that Ends Well, Measure for Measure, The Tempest, The Winter's Tale, King John, King Richard the Second, King Henry the Fourth, King Henry the Fifth, King Richard the Third, King Henry the Eighth, Romeo and Juliet, Julius Cæsar, Hamlet, Macbeth, King Lear, Antony and Cleopatra, Othello, Cymbeline, and Coriolanus. In Two Volumes. Cloth 8.20 4.00

HUDSON'S SERMONS. 1.40 1.75

Wholesale. Retail.

HUDSON'S SCHOOL SHAKESPEARE. 1st Series. \$1.60 \$2.00
 Containing *As You Like It*, *The Two Parts of Henry IV.*,
The Merchant of Venice, *Julius Cæsar*,
Twelfth Night, *Hamlet*.
 Selected and prepared for Use in Schools, Clubs, Classes, and Families. With In-
 troductions and Notes. By the Rev. HENRY N. HUDSON.

HUDSON'S SCHOOL SHAKESPEARE. 2d Series. 1.60 2.00
 Containing *The Tempest*, *King Richard the Third*,
The Winter's Tale, *King Lear*,
King Henry the Fifth, *Macbeth*, *Antony and Cleopatra*.

HUDSON'S SCHOOL SHAKESPEARE. 3d Series. 1.60 2.00
 Containing *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, *Romeo and Juliet*,
Much Ado about Nothing, *Cymbeline*,
King Henry VIII., *Coriolanus*,
 OTHELLO.

HUDSON'S SEPARATE PLAYS OF SHAKESPEARE.

THE MERCHANT OF VENICE. In Paper Cover . . . . .	.32	.40
JULIUS CÆSAR. In Paper Cover . . . . .	.32	.40
HAMLET. In Paper Cover . . . . .	.32	.40
THE TEMPEST. In Paper Cover . . . . .	.32	.40
MACBETH. In Paper Cover . . . . .	.32	.40
HENRY THE EIGHTH. In Paper Cover . . . . .	.32	.40
AS YOU LIKE IT . . . . .	.32	.40
HENRY THE FOURTH. Part I. . . . .	.32	.40
KING LEAR. . . . .	.32	.40
MUCH ADO ABOUT NOTHING . . . . .	.32	.40
ROMEO AND JULIET . . . . .	.32	.40
OTHELLO . . . . .	.32	.40

HALSEY'S GENEALOGICAL AND CHRONOLOGICAL CHART of the Rulers of England, Scotland, France, Germany, and Spain. By C. S. HALSEY. Mounted, 33 x 48 inches. Folded and Bound in 4to, 10 x 12 inches 1.50

HALSEY'S BIBLE CHART OF GENEALOGY AND CHRONOLOGY, from the Creation to A. D. 100. Prepared by C. S. HALSEY 1.25
 This Chart is designed to illustrate Bible History by showing on a clear and simple plan the genealogy and chronology of the principal persons mentioned in the Scriptures.

HARVARD EXAMINATION PAPERS. Collected and arranged by R. F. LEIGHTON, A. M., Master of Melrose High School. Second Edition, containing papers of June and September, 1874 1.56

These are all the questions (except on the subject of Geometry), in the form of papers, which have been used in the examinations for admission to Harvard College since 1880. They will furnish an excellent series of Questions in Modern, Physical, and Ancient Geography; Grecian and Roman History; Arithmetic and Algebra; Plane and Solid Geometry; Logarithms and Trigonometry; Latin and Greek Grammar and Composition; Physics and Mechanics. They have been published in this form for the convenience of Teachers, classes in High Schools, and especially for pupils preparing for college.

THE LIVING WORD; or, Bible Truths and Lessons .80 1.00
 The distinguishing feature of this book is the arrangement by subjects of the spiritual and moral truths of the Bible, so that all its most expressive utterances upon a given subject may be read in unbroken succession. It is believed that this will furnish what has been long needed for public and private reading in the home, the school, and the church.

OUR WORLD, No. I.; or, First Lessons in Geography.
 Revised edition, with new Maps, by MARY L. HALL75 .94
 Designed to give children clear and lasting impressions of the different countries and inhabitants of the earth rather than to tax the memory with mere names and details.

Wholesale. Retail.

OUR WORLD, No. II.; or, Second Series of Lessons
 in Geography. By MARY L. HALL. With fine illustrations of the various coun-
 tries, the inhabitants and their occupations, and two distinct series of Maps,
 6 pages physical, and 19 pages of finely engraved copperplates political \$1.60 \$2.00

This book is intended, if used in connection with the First Lessons, to cover the usual course of geographical study. It is based upon the principle that it is more useful to give vivid conceptions of the physical features and political associations of different regions than to make pupils familiar with long lists of places and a great array of statistics.

PIRCE'S TABLES OF LOGARITHMIC and TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS TO THREE AND FOUR PLACES OF DECIMALS. By JAMES MILLS PIRCE, University Professor of Mathematics at Harvard University. Cloth 60 .75

PIRCE'S ELEMENTS OF LOGARITHMS; with an Explanation of the Author's THREE AND FOUR PLACE TABLES. By JAMES MILLS PIRCE, University Professor of Mathematics at Harvard University .80 1.00

This Work is a Companion to THREE AND FOUR PLACE TABLES OF LOGARITHMIC AND TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS, by the same Author.

REPRESENTATIVE AUTHORS. By H. H. MORGAN.

This is essentially a repertorium, and can be made equally useful as a work of reference and as a companion to any manual of literature, or as a guide in any course of reading. It presents the representative authors of England and America, — their mode of presenting their subjects, the literary forms which they employ, their representative works, their characterization by critics of established reputation. The classification is at once simple and exhaustive, and meets a want not hitherto provided for.

STEWART'S ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. American Edition. With QUESTIONS and EXERCISES. By PROF. G. A. HILL, of Harvard University 1.40 1.75

The Questions will be direct and exhaustive upon the text of Mr. Stewart's work. After the Questions will be given a series of easy Exercises and Problems, designed, in the hands of a good teacher, to arouse and strengthen in the student's mind the power of reasoning in accordance with sound scientific methods.

SEARLE'S OUTLINES OF ASTRONOMY. By ARTHUR SEARLE, of Harvard College Observatory 1.60 2.00

This work is intended to give such elementary instruction in the principal branches of Astronomy as is required in High Schools or by any students not far advanced in mathematics. It is illustrated by carefully prepared engravings, and contains some information on each of the following subjects: —

1. The chief results of astronomical inquiry up to the present time with regard to the general constitution of the universe, and, in particular, with regard to the stars, planets, nebulae, comets, and meteors.
2. The methods of astronomical research, and their application to the arts.
3. The general principles of theoretical astronomy.
4. The history of astronomy.
5. Astronomical statistics.

PRIMARY ARITHMETIC. By G. L. DEMAREST . .40 .50

THE CHANDLER DRAWING-BOOK. By the late JOHN S. WOODMAN, of Dartmouth College80 1.00

THE NATIONAL MUSIC COURSE. In Four Books. For Public Schools. By JULIUS ECHENBERG, J. B. SHARLAND, L. W. MASON, H. E. HOLZ, Supervisors of Music in Public Schools of Boston, Mass.

PRIMARY OR FIRST MUSIC READER .24 .30

A course of exercises in the elements of VOCAL MUSIC AND SIGHT-SINGING, with choice rote songs for the use of youngest pupils.

INTERMEDIATE MUSIC READER .56 .70

Including the Second and Third Music Readers. A course of instruction in the elements of Vocal Music and Sight-Singing, with choice rote songs, in two and three parts, based on the elements of harmony.

Wholesale. Retail.

THE FOURTH MUSIC READER. 8vo. pp 336 \$1.20 \$1.50

This work, prepared to follow the Third Music Reader, is also adapted, under a competent instructor, to be used in High Schools where no previous systematic instruction has been given. To this end a brief but thorough elementary course is given, with musical theory, original solfeggios, a complete system of triad practice, and sacred music and song, with accompaniment for the piano. The music introduced is of a high order, and by the best masters, and is calculated to cultivate the taste, as well as to extend the knowledge and skill of the pupils.

THE FIFTH, or HIGH SCHOOL MUSIC READER

FOR MIXED VOICES. Containing a full Course of Advanced Solfeggios for One and Two Voices, and a carefully selected number of easy *Four-Part Songs*, taken from the works of the best composers. This work has been especially compiled to meet the growing wants of our High Schools for a higher grade of music than is contained in works now used in such schools.

N. B. — The Tenor Part in many of the songs may be either omitted or sung by the altos (boys).

THE ABRIDGED FOURTH MUSIC READER.

1.00 1.25

SECOND MUSIC READER32 .40

THIRD MUSIC READER32 .40

THE NATIONAL MUSIC CHARTS. By LUTHER

WHITING MASON. An invaluable aid to Teachers of Common Schools in imparting a practical knowledge of Music, and teaching Children to sing at sight. In Four Series. Forty Charts each. Price, \$10.00 each Series.

FIRST SERIES 10.00

SECOND SERIES 10.00

THIRD SERIES 10.00

FOURTH SERIES, by L. W. MASON and J. B. SHARLAND 10.00

EASEL 1.25

THE NATIONAL MUSIC TEACHER. A Practical

Guide for Teaching Vocal Music to Young Children. By L. W. MASON60

GREEK.

GOODWIN'S GREEK GRAMMAR. By WILLIAM W. GOODWIN, Ph. D., Eliot Professor of Greek Literature in Harvard University. Half morocco Wholesale. Retail.
\$1.25 \$1.50

The object of this Grammar is to state *general principles* clearly and distinctly, with special regard to those who are preparing for college. In the sections on the Moods are stated, for the first time in an elementary form, the principles which are elaborated in detail in the author's "Syntax of the Greek Moods and Tenses."

GREEK MOODS AND TENSES. The Fourth Edition. By WILLIAM W. GOODWIN, Eliot Professor of Greek Literature in Harvard University. 1 vol. 12mo. Cloth. pp. 284 1.40 1.75

This work was first published in 1860, and it appeared in a new form — much enlarged and in great part rewritten — in 1865. In the present edition the whole has been again revised; some sections and notes have been rewritten, and a few notes have been added. The object of the work is to give a plain statement of the principles which govern the construction of the Greek Moods and Tenses, — the most important and the most difficult part of Greek Syntax.

GOODWIN'S GREEK READER. Consisting of Extracts from Xenophon, Plato, Herodotus, and Thucydides; being a full equivalent for the seven books of the Anabasis, now required for admission at Harvard. With Maps, Notes, References to GOODWIN'S GREEK GRAMMAR, and parallel References to CROSBY'S and HADLEY'S GRAMMARS. Edited by PROFESSOR W. W. GOODWIN, of Harvard College, and J. H. ALLEN, Cambridge. Half morocco 1.60 2.00

This book contains the third and fourth books of the Anabasis (entire), the greater part of the second book of the Hellenica, and the first chapter of the Memorabilia, of Xenophon; the last part of the Apology, and the beginning and end of the Phædo, of Plato: selections from the sixth, seventh, and eighth books of Herodotus, and from the fourth book of Thucydides.

LEIGHTON'S GREEK LESSONS. Prepared to accompany Goodwin's Greek Grammar. By R. F. LEIGHTON, Master of Melrose High School. Half morocco 1.25 1.50

This work contains about one hundred lessons, with a progressive series of exercises (both Greek and English), mainly selected from the first book of Xenophon's Anabasis. The exercises on the Moods are sufficient, it is believed, to develop the general principles as stated in the Grammar. The text of four chapters of the Anabasis is given entire, with notes and references. Full vocabularies accompany the book.

LIDDELL & SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. Abridged from the new Oxford Edition. New Edition. With Appendix of Proper and Geographical Names, by J. M. WHITTON. Morocco back 2.40 3.00
Sheep binding 2.80 3.50

LIDDELL & SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. The sixth Oxford Edition unabridged. 4to. Morocco back 9.60 12.00
Sheep binding 10.40 13.00

We have made arrangements with Messrs. Macmillan & Co. to publish in this country their new edition of Liddell & Scott's Greek Lexicons, and are ready to supply the trade.

The English editions of Liddell & Scott are *not stereotyped*; but each has been thoroughly revised, enlarged, and printed anew. The sixth edition, just published, is larger by one eighth than the fifth, and contains 1865 pages. It is an *entirely different work* from the first edition, the whole department of etymology having been rewritten in the light of modern investigations, and the forms of the irregular verbs being given in greater detail by the aid of Velitch's Catalogue. No student of Greek can afford to dispense with this invaluable Lexicon, the price of which is now for the first time brought within the means of the great body of American scholars.

Wholesale. Retail.

PLATO'S APOLOGY OF SOCRATES AND CRITO.

Edited, for the Use of Schools, by JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, A. M.

The basis of this work will be the German edition of Dr. Christian Cron. (Platons Vertheidigungsrede des Sokrates und Kriton. Fuenfte Auflage. Leipzig, Teubner, 1872.) To the matter contained in Dr. Cron's edition there will be added notes by the Editor and from other sources, analyses, and extended references to Goodwin and Hadley. The book will be for the class-room, and all matter not of direct value to the student will be rigidly excluded.

THE OEDIPUS TYRANNUS OF SOPHOCLES. Ed-

ited, with an Introduction, Notes, and full explanation of the metres, by JOHN W. WHITE, A. M., Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in Baldwin University 1.20 1.50

THE MEDEA OF EURIPIDES. Edited, with Notes

and an Introduction, by FREDERIC D. ALLEN, Ph. D., Professor in the University of Cincinnati.

WILKIN'S MANUAL OF GREEK PROSE COM-

POSITION. 1 vol. 12mo. Cloth 2.00 2.50

LATIN.

	Wholesale.	Retail.
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMAR. Founded on Comparative Grammar. By J. H. ALLEN and J. B. GREENOUGH. pp. 268		\$1.25 \$1.56
"A complete Latin Grammar, to be used from the beginning of the study of Latin till the end of the college course." The forms of the language and the constructions of Syntax are fully illustrated by classical examples and by comparison with parallel forms of kindred languages.		
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN METHOD. A Method of Instruction in Latin, being a Companion and Guide in the study of Latin Grammar, with Elementary Instruction in Reading at Sight. Exercises in Translation and Writing, Notes and Vocabulary. pp. 108. With Supplement and Syntax. 1875 . . . . .		.80 1.00
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S CÆSAR (Gallic War, Four Books). With very full Notes, Copperplate Map, and References to their Grammar as well as Gildersleeve's Do. without Vocabulary		1.20 1.50 1.00 1.25
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S SELECT ORATIONS OF CICERO. Chronologically arranged, covering the entire period of his Public Life. Edited by J. H. & W. F. ALLEN and J. B. GREENOUGH, with References to Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar. Containing the Defence of Roscius (abridged), Verres I., Manilian Law, Catiline, Archias, Sestius (abridged), Milo, Marcellus, Ligarius, and the Fourteenth Philippic. With Life, Introductions, Notes, and Index		1.40 1.75
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S VIRGIL. Six Books of the <i>Æneid</i> and the <i>Bucolics</i> . With Introduction, Notes, and Grammatical References to Allen & Greenough's and Gildersleeve's Latin Grammars. The text is founded on that of Kibbeek, variations from that and from Heyne being given in the margin		1.40 1.75
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S SALLUST. The Conspiracy of Catiline, as related by Sallust. pp. 82. Cloth . . . . .		.80 1.00
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S CICERO DE SENECUTE (<i>CATO MAJOR</i>), in uniform style with Allen & Greenough's Cicero. pp. 57. Cloth . . . . .		.60 .75
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S OVID. Selections from the Poems of Ovid, chiefly from the <i>Metamorphoses</i> . With Index of Proper Names. pp. 282		1.20 1.50
The attempt has been made to give in a reading book, suitable for students beginning Latin poetry, something like a complete picture of the Greek mythology, at least of the great narratives which have entered more or less into modern literature. About a thousand lines of the <i>Elegiac</i> verse are added, taken from most of the poet's other works.		
ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S SHORTER COURSE OF LATIN PROSE: Consisting chiefly of the Prose Selections of Allen's Latin Reader (to p. 134), the Notes being wholly rewritten, enlarged, and adapted to Allen & Greenough's Grammar; accompanied by Six Orations of Cicero,—the Manilian, the four Catilines, and Archias. With Vocabulary		2.00 2.50
ALLEN'S LATIN READER. 12mo. 518 pages. Consisting of Selections from Cæsar, Curtius, Nepos, Sallust, Ovid, Virgil, Plautus, Terence, Cicero, Pliny, and Tacitus, with Notes, and a general Vocabulary of Latin of more than 16,000 words		2.00 2.50
ALLEN'S LATIN SELECTIONS. Containing the same as Allen's Latin Reader, without Vocabulary		1.25 1.56

ALLEN'S LATIN LEXICON. 12mo. 205 pages. (Being the Vocabulary to the Reader.) Cloth 1.00 1.25

ALLEN'S LATIN PRIMER. A First Book of Latin for Boys and Girls. By J. H. ALLEN. 155 pages. Cloth 1.00 1.25

This is designed for the use of scholars of a younger class, and consists of thirty lessons, carefully arranged (an adaptation of the Robertsonian method), so as to give a full outline of the Grammar, accompanied by Tables of Inflection, with Dialogues (Latin and English), and Selections for reading.

ALLEN'S LATIN COMPOSITION. Adapted to Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar. By W. F. ALLEN. 107 pages. Cloth 1.00 1.25

This book includes a careful review of the Principles of Syntax, as contained in the Grammar, with practice in various styles of composition (from classical models), Vocabulary, and Parallel References to other Grammars.

ALLEN'S MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR. Prepared by W. F. and J. H. ALLEN. 12mo. 148 pages, with Index. Cloth 1.00 1.25

Approved by Harvard College as indicating the amount required for admission.

ALLEN'S LATIN LESSONS. 12mo. 134 pages 1.00 1.25

LEIGHTON'S LATIN LESSONS. Prepared to accompany Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar. By R. F. LEIGHTON, Melrose High School.

This work presents a progressive series of exercises (both Latin and English), illustrating the grammatical forms and simpler principles of syntax. Synonymes and rules of quantity are introduced from the first. The text consists of about a dozen of Æsop's Fables, translated from the Greek for these Lessons; extracts from L'Houmond's Viri Romæ (Romulus and Remus); Horatii and Curatii; Lives of Cato, Pompey, Cæsar, Cicero, Brutus, and Augustus; the Helvetian War, from Woodford's Epitome of Cæsar. All fully illustrated with Notes, References, and Maps. Full Vocabularies accompany the book, with questions for Examination and Review of the Grammar 1.25 1.56

MADVIG'S LATIN GRAMMAR. Carefully revised by THOMAS A. THACHER, Yale College. Half morocco 2.40 3.00

The most complete and valuable Treatise on the language yet published, and admirably adapted to the wants of Teachers and College Classes.

THE LATIN VERB. Illustrated by the Sanskrit. By C. H. PARKHURST. Cloth40 .50

WHITE'S JUNIOR STUDENT'S COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH LEXICON. Morocco back 2.40 3.00
Sheep 2.80 3.50

WHITE'S JUNIOR STUDENT'S COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN LEXICON. By the REV. J. T. WHITE, D. D., of C. C. C. Oxford, Rector of St. Martin, Ludgate, London. Revised Edition. Square 12mo. pp. 1068. Sheep 3.60 4.50

"The present work aims at furnishing in both its parts a sufficiently extensive vocabulary for all practical purposes. The Latin words and phrases are in all cases followed by the name of some standard Latin writer, as a guaranty of their authority; and as the work is of a strictly elementary character, the conjugations of the verbs and the genders and genitive cases of the substantives are uniformly added. In the preparation of this portion of the book, DR. WHITE has had the assistance of some of the best scholars both of Oxford and Cambridge." — *Guardian*.

WHITE'S JUNIOR STUDENT'S COMPLETE ENGLISH-LATIN LEXICON. Sheep 2.00 2.50

We have contracted with Messrs. Longmans, Green, & Co., of London, for the sole agency in this country for the above Latin Lexicons, and shall endeavor to meet the demands of the trade.

